

**Міністерство освіти і науки України  
Сумський державний педагогічний університет  
імені А. С. Макаренка**

**Н.Л. Голубкова, А.М. Коваленко, Л.А. Спаська**

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR PRACTICE**

**ПРАКТИКУМ З ГРАМАТИКИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ  
МОВИ**

**ЧАСТИНА II**

*Навчальний посібник  
для студентів вищих навчальних закладів  
(англійською мовою)*

**Суми – 2017**

**УДК 811.111(075.8)**

**ББК 81.43.21-923**

**Г 62**

*Друкується згідно з рішенням вченої ради  
Сумського державного педагогічного університету імені А. С. Макаренка*

***Рецензенти:***

- С. О. Швачко***, доктор філологічних наук, професор, завідувач кафедри теорії та практики перекладу Сумського державного університету;
- О. І. Огієнко***, доктор педагогічних наук, професор, провідний науковий співробітник Інституту педагогічної освіти і освіти дорослих НАПН України;
- Г. Б. Козловська***, кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри іноземних мов ДВНЗ «УАБС НБУ»

**Голубкова Н. Л.**

**Г 62** Практикум з граматики англійської мови. Частина II. Навчальний посібник для студентів вищих навчальних закладів (англійською мовою) / Н. Л. Голубкова, А. М. Коваленко, Л. А. Спаська. – Суми : СумДПУ імені А. С. Макаренка, 2017. – 158 с.

Навчальний посібник охоплює розділи англійської граматики (неособові форми дієслова: інфінітив, герундій, дієприкметник; модальні дієслова та умовний спосіб дієслів), засвоєння яких передбачено програмою навчання на рівні факультетів іноземної філології.

Навчальний посібник містить вправи, які представляють різні способи застосування граматичних елементів для сприйняття та відтворення мовних ситуацій і відображають сучасний стан граматики англійської мови. Вправи мають комунікативну та умовно-комунікативну направленість, що дозволяє студентам розширити словниковий запас і одночасно відпрацювати навички граматично правильно оформленого висловлювання.

Навчальний посібник призначений для розвитку граматичних навичок студентів філологічних факультетів вищих навчальних закладів.

**УДК 811.111(075.8)**

**ББК 81.43.21-923**

© Голубкова Н. Л., Коваленко А. М., Спаська Л. А., 2017

© СумДПУ імені А. С. Макаренка, 2017

## CONTENTS

<b>LESSON 1 THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB (THE VERBALS)</b> .....	5
<b>THE INFINITIVE</b> .....	6
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	10
<b>LESSON 2 THE FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE IN THE SENTENCE</b> .....	14
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	21
<b>LESSON 3 INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS</b> .....	26
<b>THE OBJECTIVE-WITH-THE-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	26
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	29
<b>LESSON 4 SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	31
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	32
<b>LESSON 5 THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	35
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	36
<b>LESSON 6 THE GERUND</b> .....	38
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	42
<b>LESSON 7 THE FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND</b> .....	45
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	48
<b>LESSON 8 THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTIONS</b> .....	49
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	50
<b>LESSON 9 THE PARTICIPLE</b> .....	53
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	55
<b>LESSON 10 THE FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I</b> .....	58
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	60
<b>LESSON 11 THE FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE II</b> .....	62
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	63
<b>LESSON 12 THE PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE PARTICIPLE</b> .....	65
<b>THE OBJECTIVE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	65
<b>THE SUBJECTIVE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	66
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	66
<b>LESSON 13 THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION</b> ...	68
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	70
<b>LESSON 14 MODAL VERBS</b> .....	73
<b>CAN</b> .....	73
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	76
<b>LESSON 15 MAY</b> .....	83
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	84

<b>LESSON 16 MUST</b> .....	88
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	90
<b>LESSON 17 TO HAVE (GOT) TO</b> .....	92
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	93
<b>LESSON 18 TO BE TO</b> .....	94
<b>EXERCISE</b> .....	95
<b>LESSON 19 SHOULD and OUGHT TO</b> .....	97
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	98
<b>LESSON 20 SHALL</b> .....	100
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	101
<b>LESSON 21 WILL / WOULD</b> .....	101
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	103
<b>LESSON 22 NEED</b> .....	104
<b>DARE</b> .....	105
<b>EXERCISE</b> .....	105
<b>EXERCISE</b> .....	108
<b>REVISION EXERCISES</b> .....	110
<b>LESSON 23 MOOD</b> .....	116
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	120
<b>LESSON 24 THE USE OF CONDITIONAL MOOD IN SIMPLE SENTENCE</b> .....	123
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	123
<b>LESSON 25 THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE II IN COMPLEX SENTENCES (I)</b> .....	125
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	126
<b>LESSON 26 THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE II IN COMPLEX SENTENCES (II)</b> ...	133
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	134
<b>LESSON 27 THE USE OF CONDITIONAL MOOD</b>	
<b>IN COMPLEX SENTENCES</b> .....	137
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	140
<b>LESSON 28 SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD / SUBJUNCTIVE I IN COMPLEX</b>	
<b>SENTENCES</b> .....	146
<b>EXERCISES</b> .....	149
<b>APPENDIX 1 REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS</b> .....	153
<b>APPENDIX 2 REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES</b> ...	154
<b>СПИСОК ВИКОРИСТАНИХ ДЖЕРЕЛ</b> .....	157

# LESSON 1

## THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB (THE VERBALS)

The verb has finite and non-finite forms (the verbals). The verbals do not express person, number or mood. Therefore they cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

Like the finite forms of the verb the verbals have tense and voice distinctions, but their tense distinctions differ greatly from those of the finite verb.

There are three verbals in English: the **infinitive**, the **gerund**, the **participle**.

In Ukrainian we also have three non-finite forms of the verb (інфінітив, дієприкметник, дієприслівник) but they do not fully coincide with those of the English language.

**The characteristic traits of the verbals** are as follows:

1. They have a double nature, nominal and verbal. The participle combines the characteristics of a verb with those of an adjective; the gerund and the infinitive combine the characteristics of a verb with those of a noun.

2. The tense distinctions of the verbals are not absolute (like those of the finite verbs), but relative; the form of a verbal does not show whether the action it denotes refers to the present, past or future; it shows only whether the action expressed by the verbal is simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb or prior to it.

3. All the verbals can form predicative constructions, i.e. constructions consisting of two elements, a nominal (noun or pronoun) and a verbal (infinitive, gerund, participle); the verbal element stands in predicate relation to the nominal element, i.e. in a relation similar to that between the subject and the predicate of the sentence. In most cases predicative constructions form syntactic units, serving as one part of the sentence.

*I always liked **Oscar to sing**.*

*Oscar to sing* is a predicative construction (Objective Infinitive Construction); the infinitive *sing* stands in predicate relation to the noun *Oscar*, which denotes the doer of the action expressed by the infinitive.

In the sentence a verbal may occur:

a) singly, i.e. without accompanying words.

*She left **smiling**.*

***Reading** is my hobby.*

***To understand** is to forgive.*

b) in phrases, i.e. with one or several accompanying words (an object or an adverbial modifier to the verbal). The phrases form syntactic units serving as one part of

the sentence.

A phrase should not be confused with a predicative construction: between the elements of a phrase there is no predicate relation as it does not include a noun or pronoun denoting the doer of the action expressed by a verbal.

*She did not mean **to depend on her father**.*

*She tried to calm the children **reading a fairy-tale aloud**.*

***Hearing a footstep below** Nick rose and left the leaving room.*

c) in predicative constructions.

*I want **you to be happy**.*

*I insist on **Ann's staying** with us.*

*I saw **him entering** the Museum of Applied Arts.*

## THE INFINITIVE

**The infinitive** is a non-finite form of the verb which names a process in a most general way. As such, it is naturally treated as the initial form of the verb, which represents the verb in dictionaries.

The infinitive has a double nature, nominal and verbal.

1. The **nominal character** of the infinitive is manifested in its syntactic functions.

The infinitive can be used:

a) as the **subject** of a sentence.

***To understand** is to forgive.*

***To be good** is to be in harmony with oneself.*

b) as a **predicative**.

***To see is to believe**.*

*Her dearest wish **was to have a son**.*

c) as an **object**.

*She agreed **to come at ten**.*

*Can you afford **to buy it yourself**?*

2. The **verbal characteristics** of the infinitive are as follows:

a) the infinitive of transitive verbs can take a direct object.

*He promised **to bring the picture**.*

*He began **to feel some curiosity**.*

b) the infinitive is modified by an adverb.

*The incident made the boys pause **suddenly** in their walk.*

c) the infinitive has tense and aspect distinctions.

d) the infinitive of transitive verbs has also voice distinctions.

In Modern English the infinitive has the following forms:

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	to write	to be written
<b>Continuous</b>	to be writing	-----
<b>Perfect</b>	to have written	to have been written
<b>Perfect Continuous</b>	to have been writing	-----

### **The Tense and Aspect Distinctions of the Infinitive**

#### **The Indefinite Infinitive**

1. The **Indefinite Infinitive** expresses an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb, so it may refer to the present, past or future.

*I am glad to see you.*

*I was glad to see you.*

*I'll be glad to see you.*

2. The **Indefinite Infinitive** may express a future action with modal verbs.

*You may come tomorrow.*

*You should do it at the week end.*

3. The **Indefinite Infinitive** may express a future action with regard to the action expressed by the finite verb, after the verbs denoting *hope* and *intention*.

*I hope to see him tonight.*

#### **The Continuous Infinitive**

The **Continuous Infinitive** denotes an action simultaneous with that expressed by the finite verb, but it is in the progress. Thus the continuous infinitive is not only a tense form, but also an aspect form, expressing both time relations and the manner in which the action is presented.

*The weather seems to be improving.*

*Now they must be getting back.*

#### **The Perfect Infinitive**

The **Perfect Infinitive** denotes an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.

*I am glad to have seen you.*

*He seems to have finished his work.*

After such verbs as *to mean*, *to expect*, *to intend*, *to hope* used in the Past Indefinite, the Perfect Infinitive shows that the hope or intention was not carried out.

*I hoped to have met him there.*

*I meant **to have gone** there.*

After such modal verbs as *should, would, could, might, ought to, was / were to* the Perfect Infinitive shows that the action was not carried out.

*You could **have helped** him.*

*You should **have done** it earlier.*

### **The Perfect Continuous Infinitive**

The **Perfect Continuous Infinitive** denotes an action which lasted a certain time before the action of the finite verb. It is not only a tense form, but also an aspect form.

*I am happy **to have been living** in this city for twenty years.*

### **The Voice Distinctions of the Infinitive**

The infinitive of transitive verbs has special forms for Active and Passive Voice.

*She was born **to love**.*

*She was born **to be loved**.*

The infinitive is used in the Active Voice if the noun or pronoun it refers to, denotes the subject of the action expressed by the infinitive.

*I want **to inform** him.*

The infinitive is used in the Passive Voice if the noun or pronoun it refers to, denotes the object of the action expressed by the infinitive.

*I want **to be informed** by him.*

In sentences with the construction *there is* the infinitive of some verbs can be active or passive without any change in the meaning:

*There is no time **to lose**.*

*There is no time **to be lost**.*

### **The Use of the Infinitive without the Particle to (the Bare Infinitive)**

In Modern English the infinitive is chiefly used with the particle *to*. Still there are cases when the so-called **bare infinitive** (the infinitive without particle *to*) is used. They are as follows:

1. After auxiliary verbs.

*I don't **like** black coffee.*

2. After modal verbs except *ought to, to have to, to be to*.

*You **should pay** more attention to your spelling.*

*You must **do** it.*

*But: You **ought to do** it. You are **to do** it. You have **to do** it.*

3. After verbs denoting sense perception, such as *to hear, to see, to feel*, etc.

*We saw him **enter** the hall.*

*I felt my heart **sink** into my boots.*

**Note.** – The verb *to be* after the verb *to feel* is used with the particle *to*:

*I felt this **to be** very true.*

4. After the verb *to let*.

*Let me **introduce** my old friend.*

5. After the verb *to make* in the meaning “змусити” and the verb *to have* in the meaning “змусити, допустити, звеліти”.

*They made him **give up** smoking.*

*I would not have you **think** that I am arrogant.*

6. After the verb *to know* when its meaning approaches that of *to see*, *to observe* (the verb *to know* never has this meaning in the Present Indefinite).

*I have so often known a change of medicine **work** wonders.*

In this case, however, the particle *to* is sometimes used:

*I have never known her **to weep** before.*

**Note.** – After the verbs of sense perception *to hear*, *to see*, *to feel*, etc., and the verbs *to know*, *to make*, *to let* in the Passive Voice the *to*-Infinitive is used.

*They were seen **to leave** the city.*

*The child was made **to go** to bed.*

7. After the verb *to bid*.

*I thought she would bid me **take** a seat.*

8. After the expressions *had better*, *would rather*, *would sooner*, *cannot (help) but*, *do nothing but*, *cannot choose but*, *nothing to do but*.

*You had better **help** your younger sister.*

*I would rather **go** for a walk.*

*I cannot but **think** so.*

*I cannot choose but **go** there at once.*

*They do nothing but **make** plans.*

*We had nothing to do but **wait**.*

9. In sentences of a special type (infinitive sentences) beginning with *why* and *how*.

*Why **not go** there?*

*How **leave** her alone?*

The particle *to* is often used without the infinitive if it is easily understood from the context.

*He wants me to go there tonight but I don't want **to**.*

The particle *to* may be separated from the infinitive by an adverb; this is so-called **split infinitive**. It is hardly ever used in colloquial English.

*She doesn't want **to even see** me once more.*

## Questions:

1. What is the infinitive?
2. What are the nominal characteristics of the infinitive?
3. What are the verbal characteristics of the infinitive?
4. Name the forms of the infinitive.
5. What actions does the Indefinite Infinitive / Continuous Infinitive / Perfect Infinitive / Perfect Continuous Infinitive denote?
6. Name the cases when the infinitive is used without particle *to*.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Give all possible infinitive forms of the following verbs.

1. *to do*; 2. *to speak*; 3. *to see*; 4. *to have*; 5. *to get*; 6. *to say*; 7. *to arrive*; 8. *to play*; 9. *to read*; 10. *to know*; 11. *to sleep*; 12. *to drink*.

### 2. Define the forms of the infinitives, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I am glad to have given you the book. 2. I am glad to have been given the book. 3. We want to inform you about it. 4. We want to be informed about it. 5. We are glad to have met him at the station. 6. We are glad to have been met at the station. 7. I did not mean to interrupt you. 8. I did not expect to be interrupted. 9. He seemed to be looking for words to express himself more clearly. 10. He hates to be made fun of. 11. Children like to be told tales. 12. He does not seem to understand jokes. 13. We pretended not to have noticed his mistakes. 14. I remembered to have met the man. We happened to be camping together. 15. You seem to have been sitting here for a long time. Are you waiting for anybody?

### 3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the infinitive.

1. I hate ... (to bother) you, but the students are still waiting ... (to give) books for their work. 2. He seized every opportunity ... (to appear) in public: he was so anxious ... (to talk) about. 3. Is there anything else ... (to tell) her? I believe she deserves ... (to know) the state of her sick brother. 4. He began writing books not because he wanted ... (to earn) a living. He wanted ... (to read) and not ... (to forget). 5. I consider myself lucky ... (to be) to that famous exhibition and ... (to see) so many wonderful paintings. 6. He seems ... (to know) French very well: he is said ... (to spend) his youth in Paris. 7. The enemy army was reported ... (to overthrow) the defence line and ... (to advance) towards the suburbs of the city. 8. The woman pretended ... (to read) and not ... (to hear)

the bell. 9. You seem ... (to look) for trouble. 10. It seemed ... (to snow) heavily since early morning: the ground was covered with a deep layer of snow. 11. They seemed ... (to quarrel): I could hear angry voices from behind the door. 12. They are supposed ... (to work) at the problem for the last two months. 13. The only sound ... (to hear) was the snoring of grandfather in the bedroom. 14. He ring was believed ... (to lose) until she happened ... (to find) it during the general cleaning. It turned out ... (to drop) between the sofa and the wall. 15. They seemed ... (to wait) for ages.

**Remember the following expressions:**

**to cut a long story short** – коротше кажучи

**to tell (you) the truth** – кажучи правду

**to say nothing of** – не кажучи вже про

**to put it mildly** – м'яко кажучи

**to say the least of it** – щонайменше

**to begin with** – почнемо з того, що

**Remember the following sentences:**

**The book leaves much to be desired.** – Книга залишає бажати кращого.

**He is difficult to deal with.** – З ним важко мати справу.

**He is hard to please.** – Йому важко догодити.

**She is pleasant to look at.** – На неї приємно дивитися.

**4. Translate the sentences from Ukrainian into English.**

1. Вона почала з того, що відкрила всі вікна у класній кімнаті. 2. З моїм сусідом важко мати справу. 3. Правду кажучи, я дуже стомився. 4. Його поведінка лишає бажати кращого. 5. М'яко кажучи, ви мене здивували. 6. На цих ввічливих дітей приємно дивитися. 7. Коротше кажучи, вони одружилися минулої суботи. 8. Вам важко догодити. 9. Щонайменше, ми були здивовані, коли зустріли її в університеті. 10. М'яко кажучи, вона була нечемна. 11. Ваша остання контрольна робота лишає бажати кращого. 12. Правду кажучи, я не люблю бокс. 13. Вашій старшій сестрі важко догодити. 14. Почнемо з того, що я дуже зайнятий сьогодні. 15. На нього приємно було дивитися. 16. Коротше кажучи, він не здав екзамен з зарубіжної літератури. 17. Ми всі були раді, не кажучи вже про маму: вона сказала, що це найщасливіший день в її житті. 18. Твій твір лишає бажати кращого: тема зовсім не розкрита. 19. Це дуже дивно, щонайменше.

**Remember the following sentences:**

**I have nothing to read.** – Мені нема чого читати.

**She has nobody to speak with.** – Їй ні з ким говорити.

**What is to be done?** – Що робити?

**Who is to blame?** – Хто винний?

**I am not to blame.** – Я не винний.

**To see is to believe.** – Бачити означає вірити.

**He was the first / second / last to come.** – Він прийшов першим / другим / останнім.

**It is out of the question to go there.** – Не може бути й мови про те, щоб іти туди.

### **5. Translate the sentences from Ukrainian into English.**

1. Правду кажучи, мені не подобається ця ідея. 2. Діти виглядали дуже нещасними. Їм не було що їсти. 3. Хто винний? 4. Коротше кажучи, він не написав твір. 5. У нашій сім'ї бабуся завжди встає перша. 6. На вашу донечку приємно дивитися. 7. Щоб перекласти цю статтю, ви повинні скористатися словником. 8. Мені нема куди їхати влітку. 9. Про те, щоб купатися у цьому ставку, не може бути й мови. 10. Йому не було з ким обміркувати цю проблему. 11. Учора Ніна прийшла в школу останньою. 12. Щоб одержати гарну оцінку на екзамені, ви повинні багато працювати. 13. З нею важко мати справу. 14. Що робити? 15. Почнемо з того, що Сергій дуже хворий. 16. Щоб читати Дікенса в оригіналі, ви повинні добре знати мову. 17. М'яко кажучи, ваш товариш не правий. 18. Вона була не винна. 19. Моїй молодшій сестрі ні з ким гратися. 20. Бачити означає вірити. 21. Щоб встигнути на цей поїзд, ми повинні поквапитися. 22. Не може бути й мови про купівлю машини в цьому році. 23. Ваша остання стаття лише бажати кращого.

### **6. Explain the use of the particle “to” with the infinitive.**

1. The government must track down and punish those who hide their earnings and evade taxation. 2. Solar battery makes people feel good. 3. The first Europeans to arrive in North America were Norse. 4. The idea was to help people realize their dreams and follow them as they do that. 5. It made me laugh and it touched me. 6. He was made to laugh. 7. You have to know your product and be able to market your product. 8. Some people catch fish just for fun and let them go. 9. All can be purchased on line. 10. To help populate the colony, William Penn recruited religious dissenters from England and the continent.

### **7. Put the particle “to” where necessary.**

1. The teacher made me ... repeat it all over again. 2. You needn't ... ask for permission, I let you ... take my books whenever you like. 3. Will you help me ... move the table? 4. You had better ... make a note of it. 5. I heard the door ... open. 6. He told me ... try ... do it once again. 7. I'd rather ... walk a little before going to bed. 8. There is nothing ... do but ... wait till somebody comes. 9. You ought ... show your feelings. 10. Why not .... wait a little longer? 11. I felt her ... shiver with cold. 12. You are not ...

mention this to anyone. 13. I'll have ... go there. 14. She helped me ... get over my fear. 15. What made you ... deceive me? 16. I know I should ... have come to you and told about it. 17. She began ... talk of London. 18. I don't want them ... think you in the wrong. 19. There was nothing for her ... do but ... obey the command. 20. I'd rather not ... go home that way. 21. I think we'd better ... go and ... get dry. 22. "Do you want ... write?" – "Of course" – "Then why not ... write it?" 23. How dare you ... interfere with my private concerns? 24. She felt herself ... grow red. 25. Why not ... make him ... see a doctor? 26. I had not seen John ... lose his temper before. 27. He never let himself ... be angry. 28. There was the last thing she expected ... hear him ... say. 29. She could not ... let herself ... cry. 30. The question is, what had I better ... do with this house. 31. I don't like ... see men ... cry. 32. They do nothing but ... talk about it all day long. 33. I liked ... watch her ... move. 34. Let's ... go and ... find him. 35. Why not ... try ... say it?

**8. Translate the sentences from Ukrainian into English. Use the particle "to" where necessary.**

1. Чому б не поїхати до Криму влітку? 2. Краще полетіти літаком, так швидше і зручніше. 3. Ви завжди можете замовити квитки заздалегідь. 4. Подорож вздовж узбережжя дозволить Вам краще пізнати свою країну. 5. Ваша пропозиція досить спокуслива. Але я не зможу погодитись на неї. В мене не буде досить часу. 6. Вчора мої друзі відправились в похід через Карпати. Не розумію, що змушує їх іти пішки і нести важкі рюкзаки на плечах. 7. Я б віддала перевагу автобусній поїздки до Праги. 8. Піший туризм допомагає краще пізнати свій край. 9. Не можу не погодитися з тобою. 10. Вона їде до моря з маленькою дитиною, тому їй треба багато речей. 11. Звичайно, їхати автобусом значно зручніше, ніж іти пішки, але чому б не потренувати своє тіло. 12. Щоб дістатися Ніцци, Вам необхідно зробити пересадку в Амстердамі. 13. Я б краще не летіла літаком, адже мені недобре в літаку. 14. А я не зміг собі дозволити летіти літаком, тому що це дуже дорого. І мені нічого не залишилось, як їхати автобусом. 15. Кожної весни ми тільки те й робимо, що плануємо, як провести літній відпочинок.

## LESSON 2

# THE FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE IN THE SENTENCE

The infinitive may be used in different syntactic functions. A single infinitive occurs but seldom; in most cases we find an infinitive phrase or infinitive construction.

### 1. The infinitive as a **subject**.

*To be good is to be in harmony with oneself.*

*To talk to him bored me.*

*To see her again did not give him any usual pleasure.*

Though the infinitive as the subject sometimes precedes the predicate, cases when it follows the predicate are far more common; with the infinitive in the latter position, the sentence opens with the introductory *it*, which serves as an introductory subject. The introductory *it* is not rendered into Ukrainian.

*It is useless to discuss this problem.*

*It is nice to see you again.*

*It was my intention to show them our University.*

*Wasn't it a waste of time to sit here?*

### Phrases to be remembered:

*It is always easy to ...*

*It is hard to ...*

*It is so important to ...*

*It is dangerous to ...*

*It is natural to ...*

*It is wise of him to ...*

*It gives him pleasure to ...*

*It does people a lot of good to ...*

*It doesn't do you any harm to ...*

*It has become his habit to ....*

*It makes me feel awkward to ...*

*It surprised me to ...*

### 2. The infinitive as a **predicative**.

*My intention was to see her as soon as possible.*

*Her dearest wish was to enter this University.*

In the English language the set of nouns that can function as the subject of a compound nominal predicate with an infinitive predicative is very limited. It includes about 50 nouns describing situations:

action	aim	attempt	consequence	desire
advice	ambition	business	custom	difficulty
duty	hope	job	plan	risk
experience	idea	method	principle	role
function	ideal	need	problem	rule
habit	instruction	object	purpose	task
happiness	intention	order	reason	wish
				<i>and some others</i>

**Note 1:** The noun *thing* may also perform the function of the subject of a predicative infinitive.

*The best **thing** was to agree.*

**Note 2:** A predicative infinitive may be introduced by the conjunctive adverbs and pronouns *how, when, where, what, whom*, the choice depending on the lexical meaning of the noun.

*Now the question was **what** to tell.*

*The problem was **how** to begin.*

**Sentences to be remembered:**

*He is hard to please.*

*She is easy to deal with.*

*She is pleasant to look at.*

*The article is difficult to translate.*

*He is difficult to convince.*

3. The infinitive as a **part of compound verbal predicate.**

a) With modal verbs, modal expressions, and verbs expressing modality the infinitive forms a **compound verbal modal predicate.**

*I **can speak** English.*

*She **ought to have told** me before.*

*I **had to leave** the city.*

*She **must be working** at the library now.*

b) with verbs denoting the beginning, duration or end of an action (*to start, to begin, to commence, to continue, to go on, to cease, to finish, used to + infinitive, would + infinitive, etc.*) the infinitive forms a **compound verbal aspect predicate.**

*Now I **begin to understand** you.*

*They **continued to whisper**.*

*He **stopped to see** what it was.*

*They gradually **cease to talk**.*

*People **used to go** there but now they don't do it anymore.*

#### 4. The infinitive as an **object**.

The infinitive can have the function of object after verbs, adjectives, adjectivized participles and statives.

I. After verbs the infinitive may be either the only object of a verb or one of two objects.

1. Verbs that take only one object are: *to agree, to arrange, to attempt, to care (to like), to choose, to claim, to consent, to decide, to deserve, to determine, to expect, to fail, to fear, to forget, to hesitate, to hope, to intend, to learn, to like, to long, to love, to manage, to mean, to neglect, to omit, to plan, to prefer, to pretend, to refuse, to regret, to remember, to swear, to tend.*

*She agreed **to come** at ten.*

*He planned **to spend** the day in town.*

These verbs are usually used with non-perfect forms of the infinitive.

Some of them, however, also occur with perfect forms. Among them two groups of verbs can be distinguished:

a) the verbs *to claim, to fail, to forget, to hate, to like, to omit, to regret, to remember, to swear*, with which the perfect infinitive expresses priority proper, that is actions which actually take place or are supposed to take place before the action of the finite verb.

*I regret **to have said** it to her.*

*I remembered **to have met** him once.*

b) the verbs *to attempt, to expect, to hope, to intend, to mean, to plan, to try*, which add to the perfect infinitive a modal colouring showing that the action of the infinitive was not fulfilled:

*I hoped **to have found** him at home.*

*He intended **to have reached** the coast long before.*

Besides the above-mentioned verbs there are also some rather common phrases used with the infinitive-object. They are the phrases *can afford, can bear* in the negative and interrogative and such phrases as *to make sure, to make up one's mind, to take care, to take the trouble*.

*Can you afford **to buy** it yourself?*

*I can't bear **to hear** it again.*

*At last he made up his mind **to answer** her letter.*

2. Verbs that take two objects, the first of which is a noun or a pronoun and the second an infinitive. These are *the verbs of inducement*:

to advise	to direct	to induce	to permit
to allow	to encourage	to instruct	to persuade
to ask	to forbid	to invite	to recommend
to beg	to force	to leave	to request
to cause	to have	to let	to require
to command	to impel	to make	to tell
to compel	to implore	to order	to urge

*Tell him **to hurry**.*

*What would you recommend me **to do**?*

II. After certain adjectives (adjectivized participles), mostly used as predicatives. Semantically and structurally these fall into two groups.

1. The most frequent of the first group are: *anxious, careful, curious, determined, difficult, eager, easy, entitled, fit, free, hard, impatient, inclined, interested, keen, liable, powerless, prepared, quick, ready, reluctant, slow, worthy*, etc.

*She is determined **to go on**.*

*I am powerless **to do anything**.*

*He is impatient **to start**.*

When used with these adjectives, infinitive denotes actions either simultaneous with or posterior to the states expressed by the predicates, and cannot therefore be used in perfect forms.

2. The most frequent adjectives (adjectivized participles) of the second group are: *amused, annoyed, astonished, delighted, distressed, frightened, furious, glad, grateful, happy, horrified, pleased, proud, puzzled, relieved, scared, sorry, surprised, thankful, touched*, etc.

*He was amused **to hear it**.*

*She is proud **to have grown such an intelligent son**.*

*I am glad **to see you**.*

*I am glad **to have told you everything**.*

These adjectives and participles express certain psychological states which are the result of the action of the infinitive object, so the latter therefore always denotes an action slightly preceding the state expressed by the predicate, and can have both non-perfect and perfect forms. The non-perfect forms are used to express immediate priority, that is, an action immediately preceding the state.

*I am glad **to see you**.*

The perfect forms are used to show that there is a gap between the action and the resulting state.

*I am glad **to have seen you.***

III. After certain statives denoting psychological states, such as *afraid, agog, ashamed:*

*I am afraid **to step inside a house.***

The infinitive as an **object** can be preceded by the introductory *it*. The introductory object *it* is not translated into Ukrainian.

*interesting*

*necessary*

*impossible*

*cruel*

*I find / consider / think / feel **it** useful **to do something.***

*useless*

*hopeful*

*important*

*We find **it** pleasant **to listen to her.***

*We found **it** impossible **to leave them.***

5. The infinitive as a **part of a complex object.**

*I never saw **you** **act** this way before.*

*We expected **him** **to come** soon.*

6. The infinitive as an **attribute.**

The use of the infinitive as an attribute is far more extensive in English than in Ukrainian. This is because in Ukrainian the infinitive attribute can combine with abstract nouns only while in English it is used with a much wider range of words. Thus it can modify:

1. nouns, both class and abstract:

a) class nouns: *a patient, a doctor, a room, a flat, a city, etc.*

*He had a lot of patients **to visit** that day.*

*This is a nice city **to live in.***

*I have my wife and son **to look after.***

b) abstract nouns: *time, thing, hope, desire, wish, love, hate, beauty, help, courage, etc.*

*The best thing **to do** would be to go there.*

*I have no desire **to change** my life.*

2. indefinite, negative and universal pronouns *somebody, something, someone, anybody, anything, nobody, nothing, no one, nowhere*, etc.

*Have you got anything **to offer me**?*

*He was someone **to admire**.*

*He had everything **to make** his life happy.*

3. substantivized ordinal numerals (especially *first*) and the substantivized adjectives *next* and *last*.

*Jack was the **first to come**.*

*She was the **last to hand in** her essay.*

4. substantivized quantitative adjectives *much, little, (no) more, (no) less, little more, enough, plenty*, etc.

*I have **no more to add**.*

*I wish I had **plenty of money to spend**.*

5. the noun-substitute *one*:

*I am not the **one to run about and discuss** my affairs with other people.*

The infinitive as an attribute may be introduced by a conjunction:

*I had no idea **what to do**.*

*They had no knowledge **of how to live on**.*

7. The infinitive as an **adverbial modifier**.

a) The infinitive can be used as an adverbial modifier of **purpose**. In this function the infinitive can be introduced by the conjunction *in order, so as* or by no conjunction.

*I think I should go to England **to improve my English**.*

*Then I went upstairs **to say how-do-you-do** to Emily.*

***In order to see her better** he had to turn his head.*

*He turned away **so as to conceal** his tears.*

b) The infinitive can be used as an adverbial modifier of **result**. This chiefly occurs: a) after adjectives and adverbs modified by *too*, b) after adjectives, adverbs and nouns modified by *enough*, c) after adjectives modified by *so*, d) after nouns modified by *such*. In the last two cases the infinitive is introduced by *as*.

a) *He was **too tired to argue**.*

*The story was **too interesting to be passed over lightly**.*

*He had gone **too far to draw back**.*

b) *He is **old enough to learn it**.*

*He was **fool enough to enjoy the game**.*

*I liked Letty **well enough to marry her**.*

*Just the pressure of his hand was **enough to upset her**.*

c) *She was so kind **as to accept** my proposal.*

*He was so cruel **as to send a man to death.***

d) *He was such a man **as to treat people cruelly.***

*Do you think I am such a fool **as to let it out of my head?***

The position of the infinitive is fixed. It always follows the words it modifies. The form of the infinitive is non-perfect, common aspect, usually active.

c) The infinitive can be used as an adverbial modifier of **comparison (manner)**; in most cases with an additional meaning of purpose. In this function it is introduced by the conjunction *as if*, *as though* or *than*.

*He opened his mouth wide **as if to speak.***

*He smiled bitterly and turned away **as though to get out of the room.***

*He said he had more important things to do **than look for a vacancy for him.***

*He knew better **than to rely on her.***

d) The infinitive can be used as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. In this function the infinitive is sometimes introduced by the adverb *never* or particle *only*.

*She was driven away, **never to revisit this neighbourhood.***

*I am sorry to have raised your expectations, Mr. Blake, **only to disappoint them.***

**Note:** Some grammarians maintain that in sentences of this type the infinitive performs the function of adverbial modifier of result (consequence).

e) The infinitive can be used as an **adverbial modifier of condition**.

***To look at him** you would imagine that he was an angel sent upon earth. (If you looked ..., you would imagine ...)*

***To touch it** one would believe that it was the best of furs. (If one touched it, one would believe ...)*

f) The infinitive used as an **adverbial modifier of exception** denotes the action which is the only possible one in the situation. The infinitive is usually used without particle *to* and is introduced by the prepositions *but* and *except*. It is found in negative and interrogative sentences.

*I had nothing to do **but wait.***

*What could I do **but submit?***

8. The infinitive as parenthesis:

*to cut a long story short*

*to put it in a nutshell*

*to say the least*

*to tell (you) the truth*

*to put it mildly*

*to say nothing of*

*to be frank*

*to crown it all*

*to make things still worse, etc.*

***To crown it all, I had an accident the other day.***

***To begin with, there was not much to listen to.***

### **Questions:**

1. What functions can the infinitive perform in the sentence?
2. Explain the cases when the infinitive is used as a subject / predicative / a part of a verbal predicate / object / attribute / adverbial modifier.

## **EXERCISES**

**1. a) Use the infinitive from the following list as subject:** *to behave, to clean, to shout, to explain, to read, to memorize.*

1. ... in the classroom is an offence against decency. 2. ... why different people like different things is impossible. 3. ... the great speeches whether they were required in the course or not gave Austin pleasure. 4. ... like this is not decent. 5. ... all the dust is quite an undertaking.

**b) Use the infinitive from the following list as predicative:** *to rest, to reply, to be, to do, to get, to learn.*

1. My great ambition is ... in your theatre. 2. My first duty was ... my job and ... it at the same time. 3. Her first impulse was ..., her second not ... . 4. The thing to do was ... calm and not ... shot or captured. 5. Her intention was ... all the afternoon.

**c) Use the infinitive from the following list as object:** *to make, to write, to do, to wind, to retire.*

1. I must have forgotten ... up my watch. 2. I must beg you ... . 3. The beauty of the landscape inspired him ... a poem. 4. The accused man refused ... an admission of his guilt. 5. May I ask you then what you would advise me ... ?

**d) Use the infinitive from the following list as attribute:** *to be lost, to put, to speak, to spare, to cut.*

1. Jack took advantage of an opportunity ... to Gwendolyn. 2. And now I have a few questions ... to you. 3. There is no time ... . 4. There were routine matters on which the chiefs had given him permission ... . 5. I have no time ... .

e) Use the infinitive from the following list as **adverbial modifier of result**: *to have, to be, to see, to resist, to understand, to say, to know*.

1. At first she was too excited ... anything. 2. He was too tired ... the pain. 3. There was still light enough ... . 4. I'm old enough ... his grandfather. 5. He was glad enough ... her company. 6. I was too young ... that joke. 7. I knew Bella well enough ... that she wouldn't put up with any interference with her liberty of action.

**2. Make sentences with the same meaning by using *it* + infinitive in which the infinitive performs the function of the subject that is introduced by the introductory *it*.**

**Example:** *Having good friends is important. - It is important to have good friends.*

1. Playing tennis is fun. 2. Being polite to other people is important. 3. Learning about other cultures is interesting. 4. Walking alone at night in that part of the city is dangerous. 5. Is learning a second language difficult? 6. Is riding a motorcycle easy? 7. Having a cold isn't much fun. 8. Learning a second language takes a long time. 9. Cooking a soft-boiled egg takes three minutes.

**3. Complete the following using the infinitive as the subject with the introductory *it*.**

1. It is wise of him ... 2. It gives me pleasure ... 3. It does people a lot of good ... 4. I won't do you any harm ... 5. It was natural ... 6. It has become her habit ... 7. It surprised me ... 8. It must be very nice ... 9. It made me feel awkward ... 10. It would be ridiculous ...

**4. Combine each of the following pairs of sentences:**

**a) into one using an infinitive in the function of adverbial modifier of purpose:**

1. When he left Mrs. Otter Philip went out. She wanted to buy drawing materials. 2. At last John got up. He decided to go home. 3. It occurred to him that his information might be used. He wanted to help the girl. 4. He left the room. He wanted to avoid trouble. 5. He looked at me. He wanted to see what I meant. 6. His niece put her face up. She wanted to be kissed.

**b) into one using an infinitive in the function of adverbial modifier of result:**

1. He is old. He can be your father. 2. He felt excited. He could not sleep. 3. I am weak. I can't help you. 4. I was tired. I couldn't go up to the dining-room. 5. He was angry. He couldn't care what he did. 6. Her neck was still strong. She could hold her head high. 7. His influence with John was strong. He could get him to take tea elsewhere.

**5. Paraphrase the following sentences, using infinitive in the function of adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.**

**Example:** *I turned round and found myself face to face with John. - I turned round to find myself face to face with John.*

1. He arrived at 3 o'clock and heard that Fleur had gone out with the car at 10. 2. He looked up and found her smiling. 3. He rose and found Janet and the captain standing beside him. 4. He arrived at 11 o'clock and saw that all was ready. 5. He smiled and thought how the silvery noise which she used to make had deceived him.

**6. Answer the questions. Define the function of the infinitive.**

**Example:** *Which is easier: to make money or to spend money? - It is easier to spend money than (it is) to make money.*

1. Which is more fun: to study at the library or to go to a movie? 2. Which is more difficult: to write English or to read English? 3. Which is easier: to write English or to speak English? 4. Which is more expensive: to go to a movie or to go to a concert? 5. Which is more interesting: to talk to people or to watch people? 6. Which is more comfortable: to wear shoes or to go barefoot? 7. Which is more dangerous: to ride in a car or to ride in an airplane? 8. Which is more important: to come to class on time or to get an extra hour of sleep in the morning? 9. Which is better: to light one candle or to curse the darkness?

**7. Add in order to the sentences whenever possible. Define the function of the infinitive.**

**Example:** *1. I went to the bank to cash a check. - I went to the bank in order to cash a check.*

*2. I'd like to see that movie. - No change. The infinitive does not express purpose.*

1. Sam went to the hospital to visit a friend. 2. I need to go to the bank today. 3. I need to go to the bank today to deposit my pay check. 4. On my way home from school, I stopped at the drugstore to buy some shampoo. 5. Carmen looked in her dictionary to find the correct spelling of a word. 6. Masako went to the cafeteria to eat lunch. 7. Jack and Linda have decided to get married. 8. Pedro watches TV to improve his English. 9. I didn't forget to pay my rent. 10. Kim wrote to the university to ask for a catalog. 11. Sally touched my shoulder to get my attention. 12. Donna expects to graduate next spring. 13. Jerry needs to go to the bookstore to buy a spiral notebook.

**8. Combine the sentences. Use too. Define the function of the infinitive.**

**Example:** *We can't go swimming today. It's very cold. - It's too cold (for us) to go*

*swimming today.*

1. I couldn't finish my homework last night. I was very sleepy. 3. This jacket is very small. I can't wear it. 4. Mike couldn't go to his aunt's housewarming party. He was very busy. 5. I live far from school. I can't walk there. 6. Some movies are very violent. Children shouldn't watch them.

**9. Combine the sentences. Use *enough*. Define the function of the infinitive.**

**Example:** *I can't reach the top shelf. I'm not that tall – I'm not tall enough to reach the top shelf*

1. I can't lift a horse. I'm not that strong. 2. It's not warm today. We can't go outside in shorts and sandals. 3. I didn't stay home and miss work. I wasn't really sick, but I didn't feel good all day.

**10. Complete the following sentences, using the infinitive. Define the function of the infinitive.**

1. The weather is too cold .... 2. Timmy is two years old. He's too young.... 3. Timmy isn't old enough .... 4. That suitcase is too heavy .... 5. Ann isn't strong enough .... 6. Last night I was too tired .... 7. Yesterday I was too busy .... 8. A Mercedes-Benz is too expensive .... 9. I don't have enough money .... 10. Yesterday I didn't have enough time .... 11. A teenager is old enough .... 12. This coffee is too hot .... 13. I know English well enough .... 14. The test was too long .... 15. I'm too short .... 16. I'm not tall enough .....

**11. Construct the following sentences, using the infinitive in the function of an attribute.**

1. He has the advantage... 2. This is no time... 3. This is not a thing... 4. Is there nobody ...? 5. There is nothing... 6. This is no place... 7. He is not a man...

**12. Replace the subordinate attributive clause by an infinitive in the function of an attribute.**

**Example:** *I had avoided the house all day and had brought food that we could eat by the lake. - I had avoided the house all day and had brought food to eat by the lake.*

1. I have got something better that I can do with my time. 2. There was nothing else we could do. 3. He might have something he wanted to tell her. 4. I just want to know if there is anything that can be done. 5. At the end of the year there was a great deal we had to do. 6. There was nothing more that could be done here. 7. There are various things we must discuss. 8. There was not a thing one could find fault with. 9. I have got a suggestion I can make to you.

### **13. Define the function of the infinitive. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. There was nothing to worry about. The young figure-skaters were at their best. 2. The European championship in hockey was exciting enough to be followed with great interest. It attracted a lot of fans. 3. She was too much anxious to speak after winning the first prize. 4. The coach gathered all the members of his team to discuss the result of the competition. 5. Football is a game in which there are eleven players on each side. The goalkeeper stands in the goal to protect it. 6. A referee is a person to act as a judge in a game. 7. Last Saturday David Bryson and his father went to Manchester Football Ground to see the football match. 8. The match was expected to be a very exciting one. 9. A Manchester player was the first to score a goal and the fans of the team shouted loudly to encourage him. 10. During six years John went in for field and track events, but not so long ago he broke his leg never to go in for this kind of sport again. 11. Nick raced towards the goal at a high speed but suddenly stopped as if to decide what he should do next. 12. The coach was experienced enough to understand that the game would be lost.

### **14. Define the functions of the infinitive. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. We visit about a dozen stores to admire luxury goods we cannot afford. 2. The first people to reach North America almost certainly did so without knowing they had crossed into a new continent. 3. Around that time the mammoth began to die out. 4. If a financial scheme sounds too good to be true, it probably is. It is possible to pay off a mortgage earlier than the scheduled pay out. 5. Most houses have four bedrooms and big eat-in kitchens to accommodate large families. 6. This is the best opportunity to buy a new house in the new area or to stay in the neighbourhood where you grew up. 7. Enough horses escaped from Coronado's party to transform life on the Great Plains. 8. Settlers had to be transported nearly 5000 km across the sea. 9. The Massachusetts Bay colony was to play a significant role in the development of the entire New England region. 10. She got on a bus to go down town and the bus was too full to move when it came time for her to get out.

### **15. Make up sentences of your own, using the following infinitive phrases parenthetically.**

to be quite frank; to tell the truth; to make a long story short; to put it more plainly; to be sure; to put it mildly; to crown it all; to be more precise; to say nothing of; to make things worse.

## LESSON 3

### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

In Modern English we find the following predicative constructions with the infinitive:

- 1) the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction;
- 2) the Subjective Infinitive Construction;
- 3) the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

### THE OBJECTIVE-WITH-THE-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case. In the sentence this construction has the function of a complex object.

#### The Use of the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction

1. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs denoting **sense perception**, such as *to hear, to see, to watch, to feel, to observe, to notice*, etc.

*I heard someone called me.*

*I saw Ann enter the room.*

After the verbs of sense perception the Indefinite Infinitive Active is used. If the meaning is passive we use Participle II.

*I saw the fire slowly conquered.*

**Note 1:** the verb *to see* is followed by a clause and not by the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction when it is not really a verb of sense perception, i.e. when it means “*to understand*”.

*I saw that he did not realize the danger.*

After the verbs *to see* and *to notice* the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is not used with the verb *to be*; a subordinate clause is used in such cases.

*I saw that he was pale.*

**Note 2:** When the verb *to hear* is not a verb of sense perception, i.e. when it means “*to learn*”, “*to be told*”, a clause or a gerund (and not the Objective-with-the-Infinitive) is used.

*I hear that he left for the South (of his leaving for the South). – Я чув / Мені сказали ....*

2. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs denoting **mental activity**, such as *to know, to think, to consider, to believe, to suppose, to expect, to imagine, to find, to feel, to trust*, etc.

After verbs of mental activity in the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction the verb *to be* is generally used. (This restriction does not apply to the verb *to expect*.)

*I know **you to be the most honest, spotless creature that ever lived.***

*They all considered **him to be a good chap but a little wild.***

*Everybody expected **her to marry Pete.***

After verbs of mental activity the Perfect Infinitive is used but seldom.

*The doctor found **her heart to have stopped** two hours before.*

**Note:** With the verbs *to think*, *to consider*, *to find* the same idea can be expressed without an infinitive.

*I thought **her beautiful.***

*She found **the subject rather interesting.***

*You consider **yourself an impressive person, don't you?***

3. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs of **declaring**: *to pronounce*, *to declare*, *to report*, etc.

*She declared **her mind to be an abyss of ignorance.***

*The doctor pronounced **the wound to be a slight one.***

4. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs denoting **wish** and **intention**: *to want*, *to wish*, *to desire*, *to mean*, *to intend*, *to choose* (in the meaning of “хотіти”), *should like*.

*I want **you to come and dine with us.***

*She desired **me to follow her upstairs.***

*I didn't mean **you to learn the poem by heart.***

*I don't choose **you to go by yourself to a hotel.***

5. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs and expressions denoting **feeling** and **emotion**: *to like*, *to dislike*, *to love*, *to hate*, *cannot bear*, etc.

*I dislike **you to talk like that.***

*I hate **him to sing this song.***

*I can't bare **you to speak of that.***

6. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs denoting **order** and **permission**: *to order*, *to allow*, *to suffer*, *to permit*, *to have*, etc.

Here we find the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction only if the object is expressed by a noun or pronoun denoting a lifeless thing or when the infinitive is passive. This restriction does not apply to the verbs *to suffer* and *to have*.

*She ordered **her carriage to be ready** early in the morning.*

*She had never allowed **the name of John Gordon to pass her lips.***

*He ordered **the boy to be put to bed.***

*The teacher ordered **the room to be cleaned**.*

**Note:** After such verbs as “*to order*” and “*to allow*” the Infinitive in the Active Voice can be used only when these verbs are followed by an object denoting a person who is ordered or allowed to do something.

*The dean allowed **the secretary to change the time-table**.*

Such sentences as “*the dean allowed to change the time-table*” are impossible in English whereas in Ukrainian they are widely used.

So when translating such sentences into English we use the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction where the Infinitive is in the Passive Voice.

*The dean allowed **the time-table to be changed**.*

*Mr. Dombey suffered **Florence to play with Paul**.*

*They could not suffer **Jane to leave them without any present**.*

*I won't have **you speak like that**, dear Tess.*

From these examples we see that the verb *to suffer*, when followed by the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction, is rendered in affirmative sentences by *дозволяти неохоче*. In negative sentences it is rendered by *допускати, дозволяти*. The verb *to have* denotes permission only in negative sentences; it is very close in meaning to the verb *to suffer* and is translated in the same way.

7. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction is used after verbs denoting **compulsion**: *to make* (in the meaning of “змушувати”), *to cause* (in the meaning of “змусити”, “розпорядитися”), *to get* (in the meaning of “добитися”), *to have* (in the meaning of “змусити”, “сказати щоб”).

*Light steps in the gravel made **him turn his head**.*

*The noise caused **her to awake**.*

*She caused **a telegramme to be sent to him**.*

*I cannot get **her to finish her lesson**.*

*Nick had **Ann to bring in the soup**.*

8. The Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction also occurs after certain verbs requiring a prepositional object, for example *to count (up)on*, *to rely (up)on*, *to look for*, *to listen to*, *to wait for*, etc.

*I rely on **you to come in time**.*

*Can't I count upon **you to help**?*

The gerund however is possible here.

*I rely on **your coming in time**.*

After the verb *to listen to* the infinitive is used without the particle *to*.

*He was listening attentively to **the chairman speak**.*

## Questions:

1. Name the predicative constructions with the infinitive.
2. What does the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction consist of?
3. What function does the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction perform in the sentence?
4. When is the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction used?

## EXERCISES

### 1. Point out the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Solar battery makes people feel good but never pays back financially. 2. Mother has been reluctant to let her twins watch DVD in their car. 3. The stones make me think of beaches. 4. We want our children to go to college and university to be professional people. 5. The idea was to help people realize their dreams. 6. It made me laugh and it touched me. 7. I can't bear you to be unhappy. 8. I won't have you do such things. 9. He had never seen her look prettier. 10. I found his work to be directionless, merely "copy". 11. She felt the wind blow cold on her neck. 12. He watched her turn from him and run to the door. 13. I never saw a man pick up this word so quickly. 14. I don't even think they heard us come in. 15. I have watched you paint a picture. 16. I never before heard him speak so much. 17. I can watch your heart beat. 18. He can make anyone talk who needs help. 19. I saw one of the three men start for him and I saw this man's face.

### 2. Form the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Constructions out of the elements in brackets.

1. I don't wish ... (you, to understand) me. 2. When he came in, he wanted to call you, but I persuaded (he, to wait) until morning. 3. Then she turned to the window and asked ... (I, to open) it. 4. I saw ... (my mother, to pause) and ... (to put) her hand on her forehead. 5. He flushed indignantly but forced ... (oneself, to answer). 6. I felt they expected ... (I, to say) clever things but I could say nothing. 7. From now on I'll have ... (you, to know) this is my business. 8. The coach made ... (the team, to train) harder and harder. 9. I forced ... (he, to eat) after luncheon. I induced ... (he, to lie) down but he couldn't sleep. 10. She persuaded ... (he, to see) a doctor.

### 3. Complete the following so as to use the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Constructions.

1. We saw two of the girls ....
2. I have never heard ...
3. They had no money, no

experience, nothing but a desire to make a dream ... 4. He watched and suddenly he saw her ... 5. He liked to see people ... 6. Well, I let them ... 7. She was asleep when we returned from the market, but at once got up when she heard us ... 8. Will you come over and watch me ... 9. Obviously, he was not so strong as she had thought him ... 10. There was a shock and he felt himself...

#### **4. Respond the following using the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction.**

**Example:** *Buy the tickets for the football match. – Do you really want me to buy tickets for the football match?*

1. Go in for ice-dancing. 2. Don't go in for long distance running. 3. You are good at playing chess. Take part in the coming chess tournament. 4. Do your best to be sent to Wimbledon to participate in the most interesting competition in tennis. 5. Be reasonable to take part in the championship in athletics. 6. I advise you to read this unputdownable book.

#### **5. Paraphrase the following sentences as in the example using the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction.**

**Example:** *I don't think Ann should watch the late film. – I don't want Ann to watch the late film.*

1. She is going to tidy her clothes away. Her mother asked her to do it. – Her mother wants ... 2. It's Mary's turn to do the washing-up. I insist on it. – I insist on ... 3. Why don't you come to my party? I would like ... 4. Mark fell into the swimming pool on his wedding day. I'll never forget that. – I'll never forget ... 5. You have to finish this project today. I want you ... 6. I don't think my secretary should attend the meeting. – I don't want ...

#### **6. Translate into English.**

1. Він терпіти не міг, коли люди голосно сміялися. 2. Я чув, що хтось постукав у двері. 3. Я знаю, що твій брат хворий. 4. Мама примусила мене поїхати на дачу. 5. Його батьки не розраховували, що після школи він піде в університет. 6. Я примушу його принести книжку завтра. 7. Він почув, що хтось називає його прізвище. 8. Я хочу, щоб ви були уважнішими. 9. Вони не сподівалися, що ми візьмемо участь в обговоренні цього складного питання. 10. Нам краще б увійти до будинку: я не хочу, щоб ви застудилися. 11. Я знаю, що вона краща учениця школи. 12. Я почула, як моя улюблена ваза розбилася. 13. Я не сподівався, що ти розсердишся. 14. Я не люблю, коли діти залишаються самі. 15. Вона не чула, як заплакала дитина. 16. Я розраховую, що ти прийдеш завтра, щоб допомогти мені у садку. 17. Ми часто чули, як вони сваряться. 18. Він хотів піти рано, але вчитель змусив його залишитися. 19. Він знає, що я великий театрал. 20. Ми розраховували, що погода зміниться. 21. Холодний вітер примусив його одягнути пальто. 22. Ми

любили приходити в сад і спостерігати, як грають діти. 23. Ви бачили, як кішка піймала мишу? 24. Я не спав і чув, як хтось увійшов у будинок. 25. Ми бачили, як він зайшов у кафе. 26. Діти люблять, коли їм розповідають казки.

## LESSON 4

### SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

*The Subjective Infinitive Construction (Nominative-with-the-Infinitive Construction)* is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case. So, this construction consists of a noun in the common case or a personal pronoun in the nominative case and infinitive.

The peculiarity of the construction is that it does not serve as one part of the sentence: one of its components (a noun or pronoun) has the function of the subject, the other (an infinitive) forms the part of a compound verbal predicate.

#### THE USE OF THE SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

I. The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the following groups of verbs in the Passive Voice:

1. With verbs denoting **sense perception**: *to see, to hear, to watch, to smell, to feel, to observe, etc.*

*She was heard to laugh heartily.*

If the process is expressed **Participle I Indefinite Active** is used.

*He was seen approaching the café at that moment.*

2. With verbs denoting **mental activity**: *to think, to consider, to suppose, to expect, to believe, etc.*

*He was thought to be honest and kind.*

*The manuscript is believed to have been written in the XVth century.*

3. With verbs denoting **compulsion**: *to make, to force, to cause, etc.*

*He was made to get up and to put on his clothes.*

4. With verbs denoting **declaring**: *to say, to report, to announce, to tell, to state, etc.*

*They are said to know Chinese very well.*

*The delegation is reported to have arrived on Monday.*

5. With verbs denoting **order, request, permission**: *to order, to request, to let, to*

*permit, to allow, to ask, to implore, to force, to urge, etc.*

***They were ordered to leave the classroom.***

II. The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the following pairs of synonyms in the Active Voice: *to seem – to appear, to happen – to chance* (the latter is literary), *to prove – to turn out*.

***They seem to have forgotten him already.***

***The weather appears to be improving.***

***I happened to be there at that time.***

***He proved to be a very good worker.***

III. The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used with the following expressions: *to be (un)likely, to be sure, to be certain*:

***He is sure to marry her.***

***They are unlikely to come.***

Sentences of this kind are rendered into Ukrainian by a simple sentence with a modal word (напевно, імовірно).

**Note:** The infinitive in sentences with the Subjective Infinitive Construction refers to a future action except with the verbs and word-groups whose meaning allows of it: *to expect, to be sure (certain), to be likely*.

*We are sure to come.*

*He is expected to give us an answer.*

### **Questions:**

1. What does the Subjective Infinitive Construction consist of?
2. What is the peculiarity of the Subjective Infinitive Construction?
3. What are the groups of verbs and expressions the Subjective Infinitive Construction is used after?

## **EXERCISES**

**1. Point out the Subjective Infinitive Construction and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. In 1001 Eric's son Leif is thought to have explored the northeast coast of Canada.
2. No tribe was allowed to make war by itself.
3. Corners of the buildings seemed to be crumbling away into dust.
4. Every window she saw on her way uptown seemed to be broken.
5. There don't seem to be any policemen around.
6. At its peak, the Beringia is thought to have been some 1.500 km wide.
7. The Adenans (Indian tribe) appear to have been absorbed by various groups of Kopewellians who are believed to be great traders.
- 8.

But I don't happen to know anything. 9. You will never be likely to fall in love with him. 10. We are working now and we'll be sure to pay you on Saturday. 11. Mary loved working about the studio she happened to live in and took pride in keeping it in an apple-pie order. 12. We have not been required to take any work. 13. I don't happen to see any difference between them. 14. That is supposed to be a rose. 15. I happened to see them last Sunday. 16. The job turned out to be the biggest thing of its kind that I have never been in. 17. The Tower of London is known to be founded by Julius Caesar. 18. He is allowed to skate every Sunday. 19. He was expected to join the expedition in North America.

**2. Recast the following sentences so as to use the Subjective Infinitive Construction.**

1. It seems that he is not in the habit of coming in time. 2. They say he is honest. 3. It appeared that he had done it well. 4. It was not likely that he was going to be drawn into an argument. 5. The man had read his papers, it seemed. 6. It was very unlikely they would allow her to see visitors at this time of night. 7. It was believed that his advice was ignored. 8. It appeared that Betty was delighted. 9. It is pretty unlikely that they would approve of it. 10. It appears that they have some difficulties with the car.

**3. Paraphrase the following using the Subjective Infinitive Constructions.**

**Example:** *He was taken aback (to seem). – He seemed to be taken aback.*

1. She is busy today (to seem). 2. The situation has changed a lot (to appear). 3. The Carpathian Mountains were visited by numerous skiers last winter (to know). 4. He didn't have any money with him (to happen). 5. Nobody knew the way, so I had to return (to happen). 6. His plan is rather unrealistic (to appear). 7. She wasn't properly dressed (to happen). 8. He was in high spirits when he got out of the train (to seem). 9. He lived with an uncle and aunt on the outskirts of a little Kentish town by the sea (to know). 10. Ann would never speak to me again (unlikely). 11. He got a scholarship to Wenham (to know). 12. The path is used quite often nowadays (to appear).

**4. Complete the following so as to use the Subjective Infinitive Constructions.**

1. The girls seem ... 2. The weather appears ... 3. You are supposed ... 4. Our friends are sure ... 5. It is wonderful how everything seems ... 6. He said somebody was supposed ... 7. Everything that morning seemed ... 8. I will not deny that several times I was tempted ... 9. None will accompany me and I am forced ... 10. It's hard for us to understand how such thing is permitted ... 11. What time are you supposed ...? 12. The train was seen ... 13. This was supposed ... 14. They might be made ... 15. As a result, when they were told ..., they did it.

## **5. Translate into English.**

1. Кажуть, що цей будинок було збудовано у XIX столітті. 2. Припускають, що засідання закінчиться о восьмій годині. 3. Не сподівалися, що холодна погода настане так рано. 4. Виявилося, що ми вже колись зустрічалися. 5. Ви, здається, стомилися. 6. Умови роботи виявилися важчими, ніж передбачалося. 7. Ви випадково не знаєте цього чоловіка? 8. Книжка, яку ви мені дали, виявилася нудною. 9. Нові автобуси здаються дуже зручними. 10. З трьох сестер Бронте Шарлотта вважається найбільш талановитою. 11. Відомо, що англійська письменниця Войнич жила протягом кількох років у Петербурзі і вивчала російську літературу. Вважають, що російська література вплинула на її творчість. 12. Ваш друг, здається, цікавиться давньою історією Британських островів. 13. Відомо, що римляни побудували на Британських островах хороші дороги. 14. Вважають, що поема "Беовульф" була написана у VIII столітті. 15. Вальтер Скотт вважається творцем історичного роману. 16. Повідомляють, що експедиція дісталася місця призначення. 17. Я випадково знаю номер його телефону. 18. Він виявився гарним спортсменом. 19. Він, виявляється, пише нову статтю: здається, він працює над нею вже два тижні. 20. Я випадково зустрів його у Полтаві. 21. Думають, що вони знають про це більше, ніж хочуть показати. 22. Джим виявився хоробрим хлопчиком. 23. Рочестер випадково зустрів Джейн по дорозі додому. 24. Кажуть, що він працює над своїм винаходом уже кілька років. 25. Кажуть, що цю статтю перекладено на всі мови світу. 26. Ви, здається, багато читали до вступу в університет.

## **6. Point out the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Constructions and the Subjective Infinitive Constructions. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. A moment's reflection made him realize that he was right. 2. He sat down again and appeared to be lost in thought. 3. I watched the carriage turn round the corner. 4. She watched John pace up and down the room. 5. She and I are said to be alike. 7. The job turned out to be the biggest thing of its kind that I have ever been in. 9. They are sure to know each other. 10. I've never seen him fly into a rage. 11. The book proves to be useful once again. 12. The Tower of London is known to have been founded by Julius Caesar. 13. She did not seem to notice us. 14. He was seen to cross the street and turn round the corner. 15. We want all transport workers to be paid well. 16. Urgent matters are sure to take up much time. 17. The literature of any nation can't be said to have established itself until it has produced something unique.

## LESSON 5

# THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

The *for-to-Infinitive Construction* is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case preceded by the preposition *for*. It consists of:

- a) preposition *for*,
- b) noun in the common case or personal pronoun in the objective case,
- c) infinitive with particle *to*.

In the sentence the *for-to-Infinitive Construction* performs the functions of:

1. Subject (often with the introductory *it*)

*For me to get this book is very important.*

*It is easy for you to say that.*

If the sentence begins with the introductory *it*, the subject which is expressed by the *for-to-Infinitive Construction* is placed after the predicate.

2. Predicative

*It is for you to decide.*

*That was for him to find out.*

3. Complex object

*He waited for her to speak.*

*He asked for the papers to be brought.*

*I am anxious for Mr. Swan to succeed in all his affairs.*

4. Attribute

*The best thing for you to do is to go home.*

*There is nobody here for him to play with.*

*There is nothing for her to read.*

5. Adverbial modifier:

- a) of purpose.

*He stepped aside for me to pass.*

*The teacher gave several examples for the students to understand the rule better.*

- b) of result.

*The water was too cold for the children to bathe.*

*It was too late for him to go.*

### Questions:

1. What does the *for-to-Infinitive Construction* consist of?
2. What functions does the *for-to-Infinitive Construction* perform in the sentence?

## EXERCISES

### 1. State the syntactic functions of the for-to-Infinitive Construction and translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Mother has been reluctant to let her twins watch DVD in the car. Now it's hard for her to get them away from that. 2. The bus was too full to move when it came time for her to get out. 3. They waited politely for the girl to explain. 4. It is hard for us today to appreciate how innovative the Santa Fe Opera was in its early days. 5. The new building code makes it easier for builders to install solar panels. 6. The best thing is for you to consult the doctor at once. 7. There was no reason for her to worry. 8. It is unbelievable for the man to go so far beyond his limit. 9. It is high time for you to know grammar well. 10. Let's wait for them to settle the matter. 11. My friend motioned for him to come in. 12. Well, seventy was the outside limit, it was then time, George said, for them to go and leave their money for their children. 13. She waited for him to say something. 14. The lady was speaking too fast for them to catch what she said. 15. They told him to be a good boy and waited for him to come home in the evening. 16. They thought it was better for me to live in a place like this. 17. It was impossible for me to persuade myself that I had to do it. 18. They were grouped about the mother, waiting for something to happen.

### 2. Respond to the following questions using the for-to-Infinitive Constructions.

**Example:** *Whom is she waiting for? – She is waiting for her daughter to come home from school.*

1. Why is it necessary for her to translate this article? 2. Who told them to wait for him to return? 3. What do you think will be more sensible for him to do? 4. Why are you sure it'll be better for you to live in the country this summer? 5. What does she seem to be waiting for? 6. Why is it impossible for me to join them? 7. Wouldn't it be better for us to learn more about each other? 8. Why was it difficult for you to persuade him to come to see us? 9. When is it time for me to ring you up? 10. Why wasn't it easy for the drivers to ride the cars that day? 11. Why does she long for them to return home? 12. Would it be easy for you to go there?

### 3. Complete the following so as to use the for-to-Infinitive Constructions. Define the functions of the for-to-Infinitive Constructions.

1. The best thing for ... 2. I am very anxious for ... 3. It took a moment for ... 4. It would be much easier for ... 5. She was sitting and waiting for somebody ... 6. It is not for her ... 7. It would be more sensible for ... 8. There will be many interesting people for you ... 9. She has arranged everything for ... 10. It took ten minutes for ... 11. It is a joy for him ... 12. It was easy enough for ... 13. It would be hard for her ...

14. It is unusual for ... 15. It's time for ...

**4. Form the for-to-Infinitive Constructions using the words in the brackets in the appropriate form.**

1. I am going to ring the bell for ... (the visitors, to go). 2. My friend motioned for ... (I, to come in). 3. It is not necessary for ... (I, to explain) that we are twins. 4. It was easy enough for ... (the drivers, to get) in that way. 5. He didn't answer and I waited for some time for ... (he, to speak). 6. Now I long for ... (they, to return) to me. 7. It would be fine for ... (her folks, to have her back home) after so much travelling around the world. 8. It is not easy for ... (I, to get hold) of it. 9. She often wondered whether it was time for ... (she, to go).

**5. Rewrite the sentences using *for*, as in the example.**

**Example:** *He shouldn't play his music so loud. It's too late... – It's too late for him to play his music so loud.*

1. Barry must go to the bank today. - It's necessary ... 2. They must finish their home work. - It's important ... 3. No one has taken my order yet. - I am still waiting ... 4. You should move to the town centre. - It will be more convenient ... 5. John should learn a foreign language. - That would be a nice idea ... 6. There are shops in the hotel. Guests can do their shopping. - There are shops in the hotel... 7. The teacher spoke loudly. Everybody could hear him. - The teacher spoke loudly ... 8. I've brought some magazines so that you can read them. - I've brought some magazines ... 9. Children shouldn't play with matches. – It's dangerous...

**6. Translate the sentences into English using Predicative Constructions with the Infinitive.**

1. Його змусили звернутися до лікаря. 2. Кожен чоловік бажає, щоб його родина жила в гарному будинку. 3. Лікар попросив хворого роздягтися до пояса. 4. Кажуть, що в Сумах буде побудований новий торговельний центр. 5. Він відійшов убік і спостерігав, як учні розпалюють багаття. 6. Його вважають одним з кращих вчителів хімії в нашому місті. 7. Певно, вони погодилися розпочати огляд міста з цієї фортеці. 8. Напевно, вони полетять до Франції літаком. 9. Виявилось, що вони знайомі ще з школи. 10. Вони випадково зустрілися на науковій конференції. 11. Він почув, як відкрилися двері і хтось тихо зайшов у кімнату. 12. Сталося так, що секретар не зміг замовити квитки на літак заздалегідь. 13. Вона змусила хлопчика розповісти їй про своїх батьків. 14. Чули, як він грав на роялі і співав дуже гарну народну пісню. 15. Він уважно спостерігав, як дівчина танцювала. 16. Їй дозволили поїхати з дітьми на екскурсію. 17. Його лист засмутив її і навіть змусив

розплакатись. 18. Здається, він поїхав у неділю і сподіваються, що повернеться лише за 2 тижні. 19. Ось тобі енциклопедія, щоб ти зміг прочитати все про історію відкриттів. 20. Батько привіз ковзани, щоб я вчився грати у хокей.

## LESSON 6 THE GERUND

**The Gerund** is a non-finite form of the verb which has noun and verb characteristics.

The gerund is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb, and coincides in form with Participle I.

The **noun characteristics** of the gerund are as follows:

a) The gerund can perform the function of the subject, object and predicative in the sentence.

*Reading is my hobby. (Subject)*

*I like reading. (Object)*

*The only way out is leaving him. (Predicative)*

b) The gerund can be preceded by a preposition.

*I am tired of reading.*

c) The gerund can be modified by a noun in genitive case or by a possessive pronoun

*I insisted on Ann's (her) coming.*

The **verb characteristics** of the gerund are as follows:

a) The gerund of transitive verbs takes a direct object.

*I enjoy reading books.*

b) The gerund can be modified by an adverb.

*He likes reading aloud.*

c) The gerund has tense distinctions; the gerund of transitive verbs has also voice distinctions. The forms of the gerund in Modern English are as follows:

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	writing	being written
<b>Perfect</b>	having written	having been written

There is no gerund in the Ukrainian language and the English gerund is rendered in Ukrainian in different ways:

a) by a noun.

*Dancing has not begun yet.*

b) дієприслівником.

*And without waiting for her answer he turned and left the room.*

c) by a subordinate clause.

*He regretted now **having come**.*

### **The tense distinctions of the gerund.**

I. 1. **The Indefinite Gerund Active and Passive** denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb; depending on the tense form of the finite verb it may refer to the present, past or future.

*I was disappointed at not **finding** him there.*

*I am surprised at **hearing** this.*

*I shall be surprised at **hearing** this.*

2. The action expressed by the gerund does not refer to any particular time.

***Reading** is my hobby.*

3. After the verbs *to intend*, *to suggest*, *to insist*, *to think* the gerund expresses an action which is future with regard to that denoted by the finite verb.

*We think of **going** there in summer.*

4. After the verbs *to thank*, *to forget*, *to remember*, *to excuse* and after the prepositions *on* and *after*, gerund expresses an action prior to that denoted by the finite verb.

*I thank you for **coming**.*

*I don't remember **hearing** the story before.*

*On **leaving** the house we went to the bus station.*

The Perfect Gerund may also be used after the above mentioned verbs and prepositions.

*He didn't remember **having been** in that room.*

*They parted at her house without **having spoken** to each other again.*

II. 1. **The Perfect Gerund** denotes an action prior to that of the finite verb.

*She denies **having spoken** to him.*

*He was ashamed of **having shown** even the slightest irritation.*

### **The voice distinctions of the gerund.**

The gerund of transitive verbs has special forms for the active and the passive voice.

*He liked neither **reading** aloud nor **being read** aloud to.*

The gerund is used in the active voice if the noun or pronoun it refers to denotes the subject of the action expressed by the gerund.

*I am fond of **inviting** my friends.*

The gerund is used in the passive voice if the noun or pronoun it refers to denotes the object of the action expressed by the gerund.

*I am fond of **being invited**.*

It is to be observed that after the verbs *to want, to need, to deserve, to require* and the adjective *worth* the gerund is used in the active form, though it is passive in the meaning.

*He realized that his house needed **painting**.*

*The child deserves **praising**.*

*They were not worth **saving**.*

### Gerund and Verbal Noun

The gerund should not be confused with the verbal noun, which has the same suffix – *ing*. The main points of difference between the gerund and the verbal noun are as follows:

the gerund	the verbal noun
1. Like all the verbals the gerund has the double character – nominal and verbal.	1. The verbal noun has only a nominal character.
2. The gerund is not used with an article.	2. The verbal noun may be used with an article.
	<i>I want you to give my hair <b>a good brushing</b>.</i>
3. The gerund has no plural form.	3. The verbal noun may be used in the plural.
	<i>Our <b>likings</b> are regulated by our circumstances.</i>
4. The gerund of a transitive verb takes a direct object.	4. The verbal noun cannot take a direct object; it takes a prepositional object with the preposition <i>of</i> .
<i>He received more and more letters, so many that he had given up <b>reading them</b>.</i>	<i>She was rallying her nerves to the <b>reading of the paper</b>.</i>
5. The gerund may be modified by an adverb.	5. The verbal noun can be modified by an adjective.
<i><b>Drinking</b>, even <b>temperately</b>, was a sin.</i>	<i>He took a <b>good scolding</b> about clodding Sid.</i>

## Gerund and Participle I

the gerund	the participle I
<p>1. The gerund may be preceded by a preposition. <i>On hearing the story, he grinned.</i></p> <p>2. The gerund may be modified by a noun in genitive case or by a possessive pronoun. <i>Do you mind Nick's (my) smoking?</i></p> <p>3. The gerund may be modified by a personal pronoun in the Objective case. <i>I don't mind him translating the text.</i></p> <p>4. The gerund may be used in the function of a subject, an object and predicative. <i>Smoking is forbidden at school.</i> <i>I simply love reading.</i> <i>The only remedy is spending more time out-of-doors.</i></p> <p>5. The gerund may be used in the function of an attribute and an adverbial modifier but in these functions the gerund is always preceded by a preposition. <i>I like the idea of going to Rome.</i> <i>Upon walking I found myself much better.</i></p>	<p>1. The participle I may be preceded by a conjunction. <i>While translating the text he consulted the dictionary.</i></p> <p>2. The participle I may not be modified by a noun in genitive case or by a possessive pronoun.</p> <p>3. The participle I may be modified by a personal pronoun in the Objective case. <i>I saw him translating the text.</i></p> <p>4. The participle I may not be used in the function of a subject, an object and predicative.</p> <p>5. The participle I may be used in the function of an attribute and an adverbial modifier but in these functions the participle I is never preceded by a preposition. <i>The fence surrounding the house is newly painted.</i> <i>Entering the room, we found Michael.</i></p>

There are cases, however, when the differentiation between the gerund and the Participle I presents some difficulty; for instance it is not always easy to distinguish between a gerund as a part of compound noun and a participle I used as an attribute to a noun. One should bear in mind that if we have a gerund as a part of compound noun, the person or thing denoted by the noun does not perform the action expressed by the *ing*-form (a dancing-hall (a hall for dancing), a cooking-stove (a stove for cooking), walking shoes (shoes for walking)).

If we have a participle used as an attribute, the person denoted by the noun performs the action expressed by the *ing*-form (a dancing girl (a girl who dances), a singing child, etc.)

However, there are some cases which admit of two interpretations: example, *a sewing machine* may be understood in two ways: a machine for sewing and a machine

that sews; *a hunting dog* may be a dog for hunting and a dog that hunts.

### **Questions:**

1. What is the gerund?
2. What are noun / verb characteristics of the gerund?
3. Name the forms of the gerund.
4. Analyze the usage of the Indefinite Gerund / Perfect Gerund; Active Gerund / Passive Gerund.
5. What are the differences between the gerund and the verbal noun / the participle I?

## **EXERCISES**

### **1. Define the form, noun and verb characteristics of the gerund. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. I admit having confided in this man. 2. I don't mind being helped by my sister. 3. She felt better for having spoken frankly. 4. It is her fault that she can't help being admired. 5. On being left alone he began thinking of his temporary success and ended by admitting that he had been wrong. 6. Don't deny having displayed little heroism when the catastrophe occurred. 7. He had the advantage of having confidence in himself. 8. Raymond did not like being called Ray. 9. I remembered having met him at the station. 10. He denied having opened the box. 11. Hunting takes a lot of qualities. 12. It's no good taking advantage of people's weakness. 13. The constant chatter of the children prevented him from working. 14. I don't mind admitting that seeing a thing like this upsets me. 15. He can never say anything without arousing somebody's indignation. 16. Writing quickly tires my hand. 17. I remember having met him at the station.

### **2. Fill in the appropriate form of the gerund.**

1. On ... (to ring) the bell we were admitted to the hall. 2. He was accused of ... (to inspire) the workers of his boss's plan to revolt. 3. I hope you don't mind my ... (to speak) frankly to you. 4. I object to his ... (to admit) to our circle. 5. I can't speak about it without ... (to feel) indignant. 6. Everything depended on his ... (to be) discreet under the circumstances. 7. I insist on ... (to listen) to. 8. I am indignant at her ... (to refuse) our offer. 9. My brother will enjoy ... (to see) you. 10. She began ... (to dictate) the message. 11. She could not resist ... (to answer) his question. 12. "I apologize for ... (to come)", he said glumly. 13. I think you would please your father by ... (to do) your best. 14. The strained atmosphere began ... (to get) on my nerves. 15. After ... (to think) about it carefully I found

it necessary to warn her. 16. He was not used ... (to take) by surprise. 17. He remembered ... (to sit) in the Botanical Gardens waiting for Bosinney. 18. She had no intention of ... (to see) him again. 19. She can't help ... (to admire) you. 20. She ought to have guessed that she couldn't go far in London without ... (to recognize). 21. Fancy her ... (to come). 22. She had no objection ... (to treat) as a child. 23. On ... (to tell) that she had just come in, he sent up to her room to request her to come down and speak to him.

**3. Use the required form of the gerund and insert prepositions where necessary.**

1. He is fond ... (to crack) jokes. 2. I insist ... (to let) in. 3. They avoid ... (to look) at me. 4. We can rely ... (to find) you at home. 5. Don't you mind ... (to be) alone. 6. Nobody likes ... (to tell) he is growing older. 7. I am terribly busy ... (to pack). 8. She did not apologize ... (to be) late. 9. I regret ... (to tell) a lady such a thing. 10. They avoided ... (to look) at me. 11. He would never forgive her ... (to play) this game. 12. It's no good ... (to deny) that. 13. The tables were put on one side so that there might be room ... (to dance). 14. I don't like ... (to spy). 15. Jack would have gone to his bedroom ... (to see). 16. You must excuse me ... (to think) you were a gypsy. 17. I spent the rest of the time ... (to write) letters. 18. We all kissed Mother ... (to go) to bed.

**4. Analyze the underlined words stating whether they are gerunds or verbal nouns.**

1. Without saying anything to her he began to look for a convenient consulting room up West. 2. He had done some constructive thinking since his last visit. 3. I seem to remember beings told not to grumble. 4. His hair wanted cutting. 5. I expect you are upset by Kate's leaving us. 6. After reading for two hours he placed his brief-case on his lap and started writing memoranda with a pencil. 7. I rather fancy we can promise him a very sympathetic hearing. 8. He had been awakened by the opening of the door. 9. He had watched the passing of the horses. 10. He likes dealing with children and he likes being happy. 11. There is no going back now. 12. There came the clear hammering of the woodpecker. 13. There was a lump in her throat and a tightening at her heart. 14. Upon reading this letter he had once more a sense of being exploited. 15. She went quickly past him and out of the room without looking back. 16. He looked at us with a kind of cheerful cunning. 17. Will you excuse my bad writing? 18. There was the splashing of big drops on large leaves. 19. Her father took no notice of her comings and goings. 20. He denied having opened the box. 21. I remember seeing it on the table. 22. The coming of colonists in the 17<sup>th</sup> century entailed careful planning and management as well as considerable expense and risk. 23. The first blacks were brought to Virginia 26

years after the founding of Jamestown. 24. Their Outspoken independence was a constant warning to the oligarchy of plants. 25. The upper classes were not interested in supporting public education. 26. People became used to making their own decisions. 27. They accused several women of being witches.

**5. Analyze the underlined words stating whether they are gerunds or participle I.**

1. When we entered the room, we saw many students writing at the desk. 2. Do you mind my writing at your pen? 3. He was writing a letter when I entered the room. 4. Criticizing the work of our sports club, he said that it was not satisfactory. 5. They were criticizing the government for its failure to limit air pollution. 6. I have no objection to your criticizing me. 7. Lidia could retell the English story she had read without looking into the book. 8. Everybody ran to meet the people returning from the city. 9. They went home quickly, protecting themselves from the rain walking under the trees. 10. In this factory much attention is paid to protecting the health of the workers. 11. He stopped writing and looked around. 12. In this picture we can see a young man giving flowers to a girl. 13. Playing volley is a popular sport for young people. 14. She left the room without saying a word. 15. We had the pleasure of seeing the performance. 16. John likes studying history. 17. Never jump off a moving train. 18. Reading books is his favourite way of spending the summer holidays but he likes swimming and going on excursions as well. 19. Running water is always better than standing water. 20. The remaining cakes were given to the children. 21. The cakes, remaining from the evening, were given to the children.

**6. Translate the following sentences into English using the gerund.**

1. Перестаньте розмовляти. 2. Ми закінчили роботу над цією проблемою. 3. Продовжуйте співати. 4. Ви не проти того, щоб відчинити вікно? 5. Він заперечує свою участь у злочині. 6. Я дуже люблю малювати. 7. Ми дістали задоволення від плавання. 8. Я не могла не погодитися з вами. 9. Він розсміявся. 10. Вона кинула палити. 11. Вона уникала зустрічі з ним. 12. Ми відкладемо зустріч з ним. 13. Нарешті вона припинила сміятися. 14. Вона заперечувала, що вкрала гроші. 15. Відкладемо поїзду на дачу до наступної суботи. 16. Пробачте, що я загубив вашу ручку. 17. Коли вони закінчать писати твір? 18. Я не заперечую проти того, щоб залишитися вдома та попрацювати над перекладом цієї статті. 19. Перестаньте тремтіти. Уникайте показувати цим людям, що ви їх боїтеся. 20. Я не можу не турбуватися про них, вони перестали нам телефонувати. 21. Він не міг не думати, що його син зробив велику помилку. 22. Дякую, що ви надіслали мені такі красиві

квіти. 23. Його звинуватили в тому, що він видав важливі державні таємниці. 24. Він заперечував, що продав коштовний годинник свого батька. 25. Він боявся, що його посадять у в'язницю. 26. Шум у сусідній кімнаті заважав мені думати над цією проблемою. 27. Я думав про те, щоб поїхати на південь улітку. 28. Хлопчик заперечував, що його постійно лають і карають. 29. Я наполягаю на тому, щоб обговорити ці питання з батьками. 30. Я з нетерпінням чекав зустрічі з моїм давнім товаришем. 31. Мені не хочеться сьогодні грати в лото. 32. Їй вдалося зробити дуже гарний переклад цього важкого тексту. 33. Вона продовжує приймати пігулки за порадою лікаря. 34. Мій маленький брат не дав мені робити уроки. 35. Я не схвалюю того, що ви втрачаєте так багато часу даремно.

## LESSON 7

### THE FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND

The gerund performs the functions of:

#### 1. Subject.

a) *Skating is pleasant.*

*Talking mends no holes.*

b) If the sentence begins with introductory *it*, or with the construction *there is*, the gerund is placed after the predicate.

*It is of (no) use*

*It is useless*

*It is no good*

} *talking like that.*

In the sentences with introductory *there* the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun *no*. Such sentences are usually emphatic.

*There was no mistaking the expression of her face.*

(Вираз її обличчя неможливо було не зрозуміти.)

#### 2. Predicative. (A part of compound nominal predicate)

*Her greatest pleasure was travelling.*

*The only remedy for such a headache as mine is going to bed.*

*Do you feel like going for a walk?*

#### 3. A part of compound verbal predicate.

a) with verbs that have modal meaning (*to hope, to expect, to intend, to attempt, to*

try, to endeavor, to long, to wish, to want, to desire, etc.) and verbal phrases (to be capable, can't help, to be anxious) denoting modality the gerund forms a part of compound verbal predicate.

*He could not help **admiring**.*

*We intended **going** to the country-side.*

b) with verbs denoting the beginning, the duration and the end of an action (to begin, to start, to commence, to go on, to continue, to keep on, to put off, to end, to postpone, etc), the gerund forms a part of compound verbal aspect predicate.

*He went on **reading**.*

*She took my hand and kept on **laughing**.*

#### 4. Object.

The gerund may be used as

a) a **direct object** after the verbs that take only the gerund: to appreciate, to avoid, to deny, to enjoy, to excuse, to fancy, imagine, to mention, to mind, to miss, to practise, to recollect, to risk, to suggest, to understand, etc.

*We shall appreciate **your helping us**.*

*She enjoys **dancing and singing**.*

*Do you mind **Ann's joining us**?*

after the verbs that take either the gerund or the infinitive: to afford, to (dis)like, to forget, to love, to intend, to offer, to plan, to prefer, to remember, to regret

*I simply love **reading**. I simply love **to read**.*

b) a **prepositional indirect object** after verbs and expressions: to agree to, to accuse of, to assist in, to blame for, to consist in, to count on (upon), to depend on (upon), to (dis)approve of, to hear of, to help in, to insist on, to look forward to, to object to, to persist in, to praise for, to prevent from, to punish for, to rely on, to result in, to sentence for, to succeed in, to stop from, suspect of, to thank for, to think of (about), to have difficulty in, to congratulate smb on, etc.

*He didn't succeed in **taking things easily**.*

to be accustomed to, to be absorbed in, to be disappointed at, to be (dis) pleased with, to be interested in, to be engaged in, to get used to, to be surprised at, to be tired of.

*I am surprised **at hearing** it.*

to be afraid of, to be aware of, to be conscious of, to be (in) capable of, to be fond of, to be ignorant of, to be keen on, to be proud of, to be responsible for, to be sure of, to be sorry about.

*I am proud of **being your teacher**.*

*I am afraid of **disturbing our neighbours**.*

Predicative constructions with the gerund form a complex object as they consist of two distinct elements, nominal and verbal.

*Perhaps you wouldn't mind **Richard's coming in**?*

#### 5. Attribute.

In this function the gerund is always preceded by a preposition. Gerund performs the function of attribute after nouns with prepositions: *astonishment at, disappointment at, surprise at, apology for, preparation for, necessity of, objection to, idea of, thought of, habit of, right of, way of, etc.*

*Have you any objections to **signing** this document?*

*I like the idea of **going** to the park.*

#### 6. Adverbial modifier.

In this function the gerund is always preceded by a preposition.

- a) As an adverbial modifier of **time** the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *after, before, on, upon, in* or *at*.

***After leaving** her umbrella in the hall, she entered the living-room.*

***Upon waking** I found myself much recovered.*

*She turned **at hearing** her footsteps.*

- b) As an adverbial modifier of **manner** the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *by* or *in*.

*The day was spent **in packing**.*

*He improved his article **by changing** the end.*

*You will achieve a lot **by telling** the truth.*

- c) As an adverbial modifier of **attendant circumstances** the gerund is preceded by the preposition *without*.

*He left the room **without waiting** for reply.*

- d) As an adverbial modifier of **purpose** the gerund is chiefly preceded by the preposition *for*.

*... one side of the gallery was used **for dancing**.*

- e) As an adverbial modifier of **condition** the gerund is preceded by the prepositions *without, but for, in case of*.

*You will never speak English **without learning** grammar.*

***But for meeting** John, I shouldn't have become an English teacher.*

- f) As an adverbial modifier of **cause (reason)** the gerund is chiefly preceded by the prepositions *because of, for, for fear of, owing to, on account of, through*.

*He caught cold through **getting** his feet wet.*

*So you see I couldn't sleep for **worrying**.*

g) As an adverbial modifier of **concession** the gerund is chiefly preceded by the preposition *in spite of*.

*In spite of **being** busy, he did all he could to help her.*

**Questions:**

1. What functions can the gerund perform in the sentence?
2. Explain the cases when the gerund is used as a subject / predicative / a part of predicate / object / attribute / adverbial modifier.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Comment on the functions of the gerund. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. Looking after children requires patience. 2. The car began moving down the road. 3. He enjoyed teaching and knew that he did it well. 4. I can't afford buying an expensive hat. 5. Before speaking he thought out what he was going to say. 6. The important part is helping people. 7. There was a danger of falling ill. 8. I could not answer for coughing. 9. She laughed without replying. 10. Would you mind repeating what you have just said? 11. I remember seeing this actor in some other play. 12. I insisted on being listened to. 13. He never gave a sign of recognizing us. 14. This is not worth mentioning. 15. I wonder why she avoids speaking on the subject. 16. I hate being spoken to in such a tone. 17. After examining my watch, the watchmaker said that it was in good order and wanted only cleaning and oiling. 18. He was afraid of being misunderstood. 19. It's no use ringing him up. 20. Crossing the river in this place is dangerous. 21. It began raining just as we were leaving the house. 22. His experience in driving a car will help him in his future work. 23. He left the house without waiting for the end of the performance. 24. On seeing the train approach we hurried to the platform. 25. He began by telling how he had got there. 26. The first Indian Group began constructing earthen burial sites and fortifications around 600 B.C. 27. Indian cities depended on a combination of hunting, foraging, trading and agriculture for their food and supplies. Women were responsible for farming. 28. She was desperately afraid of their laughing at her, of looking like a fool. 29. I kept telling them and they wouldn't listen. I had some idea of going down to see what was going on. 30. The first people to reach North America did so without knowing they had crossed into a new continent. 31. The rigid orthodoxy of the Puritan rule was not to everyone's liking. 32. As more and more game was killed off, tribes were faced with the difficult choice of going hungry, going to war, of moving and coming into conflict with other tribes to the west.

## 2. Complete the following sentences using the gerund as:

### a) subject

1. It was good... . 2. It was no use... . 3. ... was not a simple matter. 4. There was nothing ... . 5. ... was a great pleasure.

### b) part of a compound verbal predicate

1. They went on ... . 2. She kept ... . 3. Little girl stopped ... . 4. They ceased ... . 5. She began ... . 6. He started ... . 7. She burst out ... .

### c) direct object

1. I suggest ... . 2. They intended ... . 3. Everybody enjoys ... . 4. They couldn't avoid ... . 5. She couldn't resist ... . 6. You would not mind ... . 7. His watch needed ... . 8. My shirt wanted ... . 9. They were busy ... . 10. He doesn't remember ... . 11. They hated ... . 12. I regret ... .

### d) prepositional object

1. I couldn't dream of ... . 2. She was fond of ... . 3. He was on the point of ... . 4. He thought of ... . 5. They were capable of ... . 6. They were afraid of ... . 7. Thank you for ... . 8. He is not good at ... . 9. They are clever at ... . 10. They insisted on ... . 11. He succeeded in ... . 12. Forgive me for ... . 13. They accused me of ... . 14. He prevented her from ... .

### e) attribute

1. Is there any hope of ... . 2. I felt the need of ... . 3. What are your grounds for ... . 4. He gave no sign of ... . 5. This was her only chance of ... . 6. He got into the habit of ... . 7. I don't like the idea of ... .

### f) adverbial modifier

1. She must keep an eye on him without ... . 2. I ended by ... . 3. After ... he went back to his room. 4. On ... I decided to leave. 5. She paused for half a minute before ... . 6. She was able to make her own living by ... . 7. Tom considered before ... . 8. We might be fined for ... .

## LESSON 8 THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

**Gerundial construction** consists of a noun in the Genitive Case or a possessive pronoun and gerund which stands in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun.

*I remember **Mary's telling** me that.*

*He denies **his knowing** anything.*

**Half-Gerundial construction** consists of (a preposition) + noun in the Common Case or a personal pronoun in the Objective Case and gerund.

*There came the sound **of the door closing**.*

*It's no good **him hating** you.*

Gerundial constructions may perform the following functions in the sentence:

1. Subject.

*The student's **knowing English** helped him greatly.* (Gerundial construction)

*It's no good **him hating** you.* (Half-Gerundial construction)

2. Object.

a) Direct Object.

*I don't mind **your smoking**.* (Gerundial construction)

*Excuse **me interrupting** you.* (Half-Gerundial construction)

b) Indirect Prepositional Object.

*We insisted **on the contract being signed** immediately.* (Half-Gerundial construction)

3. Attribute.

*There was no hope **of your getting home back**.* (Half-Gerundial construction)

4. Adverbial modifier

a) of time.

***On the teacher's appearing in the classroom**, the students stood up.* (Gerundial construction)

b) of attendant circumstances.

*I entered the room **without his seeing it**.* (Gerundial construction)

### Questions:

1. What is the difference between the gerundial and half-gerundial constructions?
2. In what functions are the gerundial constructions used?

## EXERCISES

### 1. Point out complexes with the gerund and comment on their functions.

1. Emily was confused by our all observing her. 2. There had been some talk on occasions of my going to a boarding school. 3. You may depend on my not mentioning it. 4. I began to picture to myself my being found dead in a day or two under some hedge. 5. It was so early that there was no fear of his being seen. 6. Annet's being

French might upset him a little. 7. I don't like you going out at ten o'clock at night to a club. 8. His breathing heavily was the result of running up two flights of stairs. 9. She was startled by the noise of the outer door being opened. 10. She hated his standing at the door alone. 11. I can't bear the thought of the children staying there alone. 12. We've got a lot of questions to settle before your leaving. 13. Mary was very excited about her favourite cake getting spoiled. 14. Uncle Jolyon insists on me coming to keep him company. 15. She turned round on his entering the room. 16. It was no good your doing things by halves. 17. I was too absorbed in my crying. 18. He did not recollect such a thing having happened to him before. 19. Jim's coming to that fishing village was a blessing. 20. How did you get out without his seeing you?

## **2. Complete the following sentences using gerundial complexes.**

1. I didn't mind ... 2. They objected ... 3. She prevented ... 4. I don't remember ... 5. He entered the room without ... 6. They insisted ... 7. I don't like the idea ... 8. Do you think there is any use ...? 9. I can't bear the thought ... 10. There was no point ... 11. It was good ... 12. She could no more resist ...

## **3. Change the construction of sentences using gerundial complexes.**

1. He was afraid that I would change my mind. 2. I regret that I gave you so much trouble. 3. After he had brushed his teeth and shaved, he went into his dressing room. 4. I really can't imagine that he will have the patience to go through with it. 5. Doctor Manson insisted that Idris should be isolated. 6. I remember that you reported yourself to the secretary. 7. Mrs. Barlow was displeased that Doctor Manson interfered in her affairs. 8. Why do you insist that John should be present there? 9. I did not like that you walked home by yourself. 10. He persisted that he would do whatever he pleased in spite of our advice.

## **4. Translate the following sentences into English using the gerund.**

1. Олена запропонувала оглянути визначні місця старовинної частини цього міста. 2. Творчість цього письменника варто обговорити на літературній конференції. 3. Він згадав, що бачив фотографію англійської королеви в журналі «Англія». 4. Він одержав велике задоволення від огляду столиці Великої Британії. 5. Знайомство з історією та культурою Великої Британії – корисне для майбутніх учителів англійської мови. 6. Він ухиляється від зустрічі з лікарем, тому що не виконує його вказівки кинути палити. 7. Він не міг не запізнитися. Виліт літака було відкладено на 5 годин через погану погоду. 8. Лікар наполягав на тому, щоб хворий терміново пройшов рентген. 9. Ваш годинник треба поремонтувати. 10. Я

пам'ятаю, що зустрічала вашу сестру кілька днів тому. 11. Він намагається робити все сам. 12. Він сказав це голосно, не дивлячись ні на кого. 13. Немає іншої можливості дістатися до табору до заходу сонця. 14. Студенти можуть покращити вимову регулярно працюючи у фонолабораторії, а також читаючи фонетичні вправи та тексти вголос. 15. Я дуже жалкую, що змушена залишити вас так рано. 16. Те, що він сказав, варто запам'ятати. 17. Я сподіваюсь, що ви мені вибачите, що я приїхала так пізно. 18. Він продовжував дивитися на годинник кожні 5 хвилин. 19. Він картав себе, що не прочитав книгу вчасно і не підготував звіт. 20. Я лише кивнула головою, нічого їм не говорячи. 21. Вона згадала, що послала телеграму. 22. Я думав, що ви не будете заперечувати проти того, щоб піти на прогулянку з моїм собакою. 23. Не варто про це думати. 24. Не варто їхати до села зараз. 25. Коли ви увійшли, він продовжував декламувати вірш. 26. Я втомилася слухати його нескінченні історії. 27. Він дуже здивувався, побачивши нас у театрі опери та балету. 28. Я не люблю проваджати. Мені краще, коли мене проваджають. 29. Вам не слід би наполягати на тому, щоб вам розповіли всю правду. 30. Він сердився на нас за те, що ми його потурбували.

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, of the words in parentheses.**

1. Hassan volunteered ... (bring) some food to the reception. 2. The students practised ... (pronounce) the "th" sound in the phrase "these thirty-three dirty trees." 3. In the fairy-tale, the wolf threatened ... (eat) a girl named Little Red Riding Hood. 4. Susie! How many times do I have to remind you ... (hang up) your coat when you get home from school? 5. The horse struggled ... (pull) the wagon out of the mud. 6. Anita demanded ... (know) why she had been fired. 7. My skin can't tolerate ... (be) in the sun all day. I get sunburned easily. 8. I avoided ... (tell) Mary the truth because I knew she would be angry. 9. Fred Washington claims ... (be) a descendant of George Washington. 10. Mr. Kwan broke the antique vase. I'm sure he didn't mean ... (do) it. 11. I urge Nick ... (return) to school and ... (finish) his education. 12. Mrs. Freeman can't help ... (worry) about her children. 13. Children, I forbid you ... (play) in the street. There is too much traffic. 14. My little cousin is a blabbermouth! He can't resist ... (tell) everyone my secrets! 15. I appreciate your ... (take) the time to help me. 16. I can't afford ... (buy) a new car. 17. Kim managed ... (change) my mind. 18. I think Sam deserves ... (have) another chance. 19. Olga finally admitted ... (be) responsible for the problem. 20. I don't recall ever ... (hear) you mention his name before.

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, of the words in parentheses.**

1. As he contemplated the meaning of life, Edward stood on the beach ... (look) out over the ocean. 2. It was a hot day, and the work was hard. I could feel sweat ... (trickle) down my back. 3. It is foolish ... (ignore) physical ailments. 4. You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make him ... (drink). 5. My cousin helped me ... (move) into my new apartment. 6. I was tired, so I just watched them ... (play) volleyball instead of ... (join) them. 7. Many people think Mr. Peel will win the election. He has a good chance of ... (elect). 8. If you hear any news, I want ... (tell) immediately. 9. Let's ... (have) Ron and Maureen ... (join) us for dinner tonight, okay? 10. I was getting sleepy, so I had my friend ... (drive) the car. 11. We sat in his kitchen ... (sip) very hot, strong tea and ... (eat) chunks of hard cheese. 12. Emily stopped her car ... (let) a black cat ... (run) across the street. 13. He is a terrific soccer player! Did you see him ... (make) that goal? 14. We spent the entire class period ... (talk) about the revolution. 15. I don't like ... (force) ... (leave) the room ... (study) whenever my roommate feels like ... (have) a party. 16. Yuko got along very well in France despite not ... (be) able to speak French. She used English a lot. 17. He is at an awkward age. He is old enough ... (have) adult problem but too young ... (know) how ... (handle) them. 18. ... (Look) at the car after the accident made him ... (realize) that he was indeed lucky ... (be) alive. 19. I'm tired. I wouldn't mind just ... (stay) home tonight and ... (get) to bed early. 20. I don't anticipate ... (have) any difficulties ... (adjust) to a different culture when I go abroad.

## **LESSON 9**

### **THE PARTICIPLE**

**Participle** is a non-finite form of the verb which has verbal, adjective or adverbial characteristics.

There are two participles in the English language: Participle I (the Present Participle) and Participle II (the Past Participle).

Participle I is formed by adding the suffix *-ing* to the stem of the verb. Regular verbs form Participle II by adding *-ed* to the stem of the verb. Irregular verbs should be remembered.

The adjective or adverbial characteristics of the participle are the following:

1. Participle can perform the function of an attribute and an adverbial modifier.

*A **broken** cup was on the floor.*

*We visited one of the largest plants **producing** cars in our country.*

***Entering the room**, we saw him reading a newspaper.*

The verbal characteristics of the participle are the following:

1. Participle I of transitive verbs can take a direct object.

***Opening the door**, he went out on to the terrace.*

2. Participle I and Participle II can be modified by an adverb.

***Deeply affected**, she rose and left the room.*

3. Participle I has tense distinctions; Participle I of transitive verbs has also voice distinctions. In Modern English Participle I has the following forms:

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	writing	being written
<b>Perfect</b>	having written	having been written

### **The tense distinctions of the participle.**

Participle I Indefinite Active and Passive usually denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb; depending on the tense-form of the finite verb it may refer to the present, past or future.

*When **reading** this book, I can't help laughing.*

*When **reading** this book, I couldn't help laughing.*

*When **reading** this book, you will roar with laughing.*

Sometimes Participle I Indefinite denotes an action referring to no particular time.

*He showed us the road **leading** to Edinburgh.*

Participle I Perfect Active and Passive denotes an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.

***Having read** this book, I recommended my students to read it.*

It should be noted that the prior action is not always expressed by Participle I Perfect: with some verbs of sense perception and motion (*to see, to hear, to come, to arrive, to seize, to look, to turn, etc.*) Participle I Indefinite is used even when priority is meant.

***Arriving** at the station, we found the train gone.*

***Hearing** a noise in the garden, he looked out of the window.*

Participle II has no voice distinctions; it has only one form which can express both an action simultaneous with, and or prior to, the action expressed by the finite verb; the latter case is frequent.

*Her eyes **fixed** on him, made him at last look at her.*

*I was reminded of a portrait **seen** in a gallery.*

In some cases Participle II denotes an action referring to no particular time.

*He is a man **loved** and **admired** by everybody.*

### **The voice distinctions of the participle.**

Participle of transitive verbs has special forms to denote the active and the passive voice.

***Translating** from English into Ukrainian, you should know well both languages.*

***Being translated** into many languages, the novel is well-known all over the world.*

***Having translated** the text into Ukrainian, we handed it to the teacher.*

***Having been translated** long ago, the novel is likely to be re-translated.*

Participle II of transitive verbs has a passive meaning: *a broken cup, a caged bird*. Participle II of intransitive verbs has no passive meaning; it is used only in compound tense-forms and has no independent function in the sentence unless it belongs to a verb which denotes passing into a new state: *a faded leaf*.

### **Questions:**

1. What is the participle?
2. What are the adjective and adverb characteristics of the participle?
3. What are the verbal characteristics of the participle?
4. In what ways do we form Participle I and Participle II?
5. Name the forms of Participle I.
6. What actions does the Indefinite Participle I / Perfect Participle I denote?

## **EXERCISES**

### **1. State the form of Participle I.**

1. Arthur was by a window, looking out at the city's lights, when she returned. 2. His cough has slackened but his nose was still running. Otherwise he did not grumble, he lay there being read to at times apathetic. 3. Having eaten cold beef, pickled walnut, gooseberry tart, they walked into the park. 4. Nick was not very good at gardening, having been brought up with a back yard and a few sinking geraniums. 5. Ann stepped forward, smiling. 6. Having said that Jolyon was ashamed. 7. There are wooden cabins with good beds, electric light, running hot and cold water in that block of flats. 8. Walking holidays are much cheaper. 9. Having written the letter to Mario, John Grant

probably went to post it. 10. When I came downstairs, the boy was dressed, sitting by the fire, looking very sick and unhappy. 11. Taking his seat, he looked at his watch. 12. She went out, slamming the door. 13. I saw flames rising and heard people shouting. 14. Having succeeded twice he wanted to try again. 15. Helen, being exhausted by the journey, went straight to bed. 16. The bus being crowded, my friend had to stand.

## **2. Point out verbal and nominal characteristics of the Participle I, II.**

1. Lingered in the cold, he debated whether he should ride on to the house. 2. Having heard the gist of the report, she did not dispute it. 3. Arriving at the station, he saw her at once. 4. Adrian glancing quickly round, suddenly saw Kate. 5. Jane, having slammed the kitchen door, stood waiting for Tom to open it. 6. You did not look interested. 7. She always became impatient when asked to define a word of whose definition she was not sure. 8. A little frightened girl stood in the light. 9. He lived in a little village situated at the foot of a hill. 10. She sat very still, and the train rattled on in the dying twilight.

## **3. Choose the correct form of the Participle.**

1. a) The girl (writing, written) on the blackboard is our best student.  
b) Everything (writing, written) here is quite right.
2. a) We listened to the girls (singing, sung) Ukrainian folk songs.  
b) We listen to the Ukrainian folk songs (singing, sung) by the girls.
3. a) The girl (washing, washed) the floor is my elder sister.  
b) The floor (washing, washed) by Ann is very clean.
4. a) Who is that boy (doing, done) his homework at that table?  
b) The exercises (doing, done) by the pupils were easy.
5. a) The house (surrounding, surrounded) by tall trees is very beautiful.  
b) The wall (surrounding, surrounded) the house is very tall.
6. Read the (translating, translated) sentence once more.
7. Name some places (visiting, visited) by you last year.
8. I picked up the pencil (lying, lain) on the floor.
9. She was reading the book (buying, bought) the day before.
10. Yesterday we were at the conference (organizing, organized) by the graduate students.
11. (Taking, taken) the girl by the hand, she led her across the street.
12. It was not easy to find the (losing, lost) purse.
13. I shall show you a picture (painting, painted) by a famous British artist, Hogarth.
14. Here is the letter (receiving, received) by me yesterday.

15. Do you know the girl (playing, played) in the garden?
16. The book (writing, written) by this scientist is very popular.
17. Translate the words (writing, written) on the blackboard.
18. We could not see the sun (covering, covered) by dark clouds.
19. The (losing, lost) book was found at last.
20. (Going, gone) along the street, I met my old friend.

#### **4. Use the required form of the Participle I of the verb in brackets.**

1. ... (to see) his father into Hanson, he came back to the drawing-room. 2. Imagine a person ... (to feel) like that wanting to know the German word for «basin». 3. ... (to feel) unwell, she went below. 4. And ... (to get) what he wanted, he took his hat and went away. 5. John got up and came over to Bliza, ... (to carry) the hat. 6. ... (to place) the strawberries in a dish on the dining-table, he washed his hands. 7. “You’re nice, you’re very nice», she said ... (to kiss) the baby. 8. ... (to reach) her room, she turned on all the lights. 9. She stood ... (to watch) them, her hands by her side. 10. ... (to read) the letters, he put them down and cleared his throat. 11. ... (to write) in very bad handwriting, the letter was difficult to read. 12. ... (to write) his first book, he could not help worrying about the reaction of the critics. 13. ... (to spend) twenty years abroad, he was happy to be coming home. 14. ... (to be) so far away from home, he still felt himself part of the family. 15. She looked at the enormous bunch of roses with a happy smile, never ... (to give) such a wonderful present. 16. ... (not to wish) to discuss the difficult and painful problem, he changed the subject. 17. ... (to translate) by a good specialist, the story preserved all the sparkling humour of the original. 18. ... (to approve) by the critics, the young author’s story was accepted by a thick magazine. 19. ... (to wait) for some time in the hall, he was invited into the drawing-room. 20. ... (to wait) in the hall, he thought over the problem he was planning to discuss with the old lady.

#### **5. Translate into English using Participle.**

1. Акторка, яка розповідає дітям казки у цій телевізійній програмі, відома на всю країну. 2. Наша дитина завжди з інтересом слухає казки, які розповідає няня. 3. Розповідаючи дітям казки, вона говорить різними голосами, імітуючи казкових героїв. 4. Казка, яку розповіла няня, справила на дитину велике враження. 5. Розповівши дитині казку, вона побажала їй доброї ночі. 6. Моя бабуся, яка розповіла мені цю казку, живе в маленькому будиночку на березі озера.

#### **6. Translate into English using Participle.**

1. Хлопчик, який біг повз наш будинок, раптом зупинився. 2. Будучи дуже

зайнятим, батько не відразу мене почув. 3. Почувши кроки, Ганна підняла голову. 4. Випивши чашку чаю, бабуся відчула себе краще. 5. Граючись у саду, діти не помітили, що стало темно. 6. Підійшовши до дверей, він відчинив їх. 7. Бен підійшов до дівчинки, яка плакала. 8. Мати поклала на стіл декілька яблук. 9. Дівчинка, яка плакала, була молодшою сестрою мого товариша. 10. Бабуся дивилася на дітей, які гралися у дворі. 11. Вона любить дивитися на дітей, які граються. 12. Зробивши уроки, діти пішли дивитися телевізор. 13. Лежачи на дивані, він читав журнал. 14. Принісши свої іграшки з дитячої кімнати, маленька дівчинка почала гратися. 15. Прочитавши багато творів Дікенса, він добре знав життя людей XIX століття.

## LESSON 10

### THE FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I

Participle I may perform various functions in the sentence:

#### 1. Attribute.

*The fence **surrounding** the garden is newly painted.*

In this function Participle I may be in:

a) pre-position

*They looked at the **flying** plane.*

b) post-position

*The man **smoking** a cigarette is my brother.*

#### 2. Part of simple verbal predicate.

*I have been **working** hard since morning.*

*We are **having** an English lesson now.*

#### 3. Adverbial modifier of:

##### a) of time.

***Having reached** the classroom, she became the object of many questions.*

With some verbs of sense perception and motion (*to see, to hear, to come, to arrive, to enter, to look out, to turn, etc.*) Participle I Indefinite is used even when the priority is meant.

***Arriving** there, the visitors found everything they needed.*

***Turning** slowly she went to her room.*

If the action expressed by Participle I Indefinite active is simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite form, the conjunction *when* or *while* are often used.

***While waiting*** for the waiter, he felt uncomfortable.

Don't forget articles ***when speaking*** English.

Perfect Participle I as adverbial modifier of time always denotes a prior action.

***Having reached*** the classroom, she became the object of many questions.

Participle I passive is usually an adverbial modifier of priority.

***Being left*** alone, she and I kept silent for some time.

Participle I of the verb *to be* is not used as an adverbial modifier of time: *When a boy...* = *When he was a boy.*

**b) of cause (reason).**

***Hoping*** to catch the train, we took a taxi.

***Being hungry***, I ate.

**c) of attendant circumstances.** This function is one of the most characteristic of Participle I.

*I laughed, and still ***smiling*** turned away.*

*Gwendolyn was silent, again ***looking*** at her hands.*

**d) of manner** is akin to an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. The difference is that an adverbial modifier of manner characterizes the action of the main verb.

*He came in ***jumping***.* – *He came in ***carrying*** a heavy suitcase.*

*He has been in three revolutions ***fighting*** on the barricades.*

**e) of comparison.**

In this function Participle I is introduced by the conjunctions *as if* or *as though*.

*This was said as if ***thinking*** aloud.*

*As if ***obeying him***, he turned and stared into his face.*

**f) concession.**

In this function Participle I is introduced by the conjunction *though* or *although* (*незважаючи на, хоча*).

*Though ***knowing*** what was there, he took the paper out and walked to the window to read it.*

**g) condition.**

*It was a dreadful thing which if ***discovered*** would bring them into the police court.*

**4. Predicative.**

In this function Participle I is used but seldom. It is usually rendered into Ukrainian by an adjective.

*The effect of his words was ***terrifying***.*

### **5. Part of complex object.**

*I saw **him crossing** the street.*

**6. Part of compound verbal predicate.** In this function Participle I follows verbs of sense perception in the passive voice (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, to catch*) and such verbs as *to keep, to leave*.

*Jane was **heard playing** the piano.*

### **7. Parenthesis.**

Here we find a participle phrase; a single participle is not used in this function.

***Generally speaking***

***Judging by appearance***

***Putting it mildly***

***Taking everything into consideration***

***Judging from what you say, he ought to succeed.***

***Generally speaking, I don't like boys.***

### **Questions:**

1. What functions can Participle I perform in the sentence?
2. Explain the cases when Participle I is used as a part of predicate / attribute / adverbial modifier.

## **EXERCISES**

### **1. State the functions of the Participle I.**

1. He began to stammer, gazing at her troubled eyes. 2. Locking the door, he glanced at the envelope. 3. It was a bright Sunday morning of early summer, promising heat. 4. He told me that there was no more money coming from home. 5. "And what have you been doing hitherto?", I asked him. 6. Pausing in his story, Burton turned to me. 7. In the North you find the Cheviots separating England from Scotland, the Pennines going down England like a backbone. 8. The south-eastern part of England is a low-lying land. 9. London is the main centre of the industries producing clothing, food and drink and many other specialized goods. 10. Farming land in England is divided into fields by hedges. 11. "This", he whispered, striking his stick on the ground, "is the platform I mean". 12. While eating and drinking they talked loudly. 13. Looking out of the window, she saw there was a man working in the garden. 14. Having done all that was required, he was the last to leave the office. 15. Returning home in the afternoon, she became conscious of her mistake. 16. He could not join his friend being still busy in

the laboratory. 17. Having finished his work, he seemed more pleased than usual. 18. I spent about ten minutes turning over the sixteen pages of "The Times" before I found the chief news and articles. 19. Being confused by his joke, she blushed. 20. Having been informed of their arrival the day before, he was better prepared to meet them than any one of us. 21. Sir Henry paused and then said, glancing down at his watch, "Edward's arriving by the 12.15". 22. For a moment he stood as if waiting for another question. 23. He stopped realizing he was talking to himself. 24. Having been away from it for two days I'd forgotten how depressing it could be.

## **2. Follow the directions of the previous exercise.**

1. One day at the end of the fall when I was out I saw a cloud coming over the mountain. 2. The dog Balthazar, having walked round the three small flower-beds, had also taken a seat in front of Old Jolyon. 3. Furious, Andrew did not answer, feeling in an utterly false position. 4. Noticing that they were no longer alone, he turned and began examining the luster. 5. Folding his opera hat, he sat down and took up his glasses for a long look round the house. 6. Dropping his glasses at last on his folded hat, he fixed his eyes on the curtain. 7. A week later Margaret sat opposite him, his face open and softened, as though breathing in the present moment. 8. She came stealing up the stairs with a kitten in her arms. 9. The journey despite the emotional tension persisting in his mind was a happy one. 10. He reached out for his hat and holding it in one hand absent-mindedly stroke it with the other. 11. She sat as if paralyzed, looking after him. 12. It was a large detached room, well ventilated, with a fire burning at one end. 13. Andrew glared at Miss Barlow with raging dignity.

## **3. Complete the following situations using the participle phrases.**

1. Nina hates to see people off. **Generally speaking** she ... 2. Some days ago I met Nick, my former room-mate, whom I hadn't seen for ages. **Judging by his appearance** ... 3. Sheep in this part of the country are more numerous than human beings. I didn't know the exact figure, **but roughly speaking** ... 4. Anna knew the lesson well and answered all the teacher's questions. But **frankly speaking** ...

## **4. Use the conjunctions *as, as if, once, though, unless, when, while* to specify the syntactic function of the participle.**

1. Doctor Manson looked at Miss Barlow curiously, ... measuring the meaning of her words. 2. Miss Barlow's eyes, ... questioning now were persistently friendly. 3. You ought not to be kept in the background ... being worse than others. 4. ... rushing round

the island, he buried his nose in cool mud several times. 5. ... being taken to something, he could not think of anything else.

**5. Replace the clauses by the appropriate form of the Participle I where possible.**

1. I've got my lunch which was waiting for me here. 2. He pointed to the vessel which was lying at the wharves. 3. The man who bent over her is the director. 4. Philip, who was smoking a cheap cigar, observed him closely. 5. I went to the hall for a look, and swallowed something that had been wanting to be swallowed for ten minutes. 6. Jack almost dropped the leather bag on which he had been writing. 7. Peter seated himself in a leather chair which faced the desk. 8. Stephen who had been listening to the unspoken speech behind the words said nothing. 9. When he said so, he grasped the map firmly with both hands. 10. When he hailed a taxi, he got in and told the driver to drive to Oxford Street. 11. Edward walked to the edge of the verandah and when he leaned over he looked intently at the blue magic of the night. 12. She moved away as she felt slightly embarrassed. 13. He got a seat rather far back in the upper boxes, but as his sight was very good he saw quite well. 14. As she did not know whether he had seen his brother or not, she did not know how to answer. 15. She stared back, as she did not know what to do. 16. Then I walked slowly down the drive away from the house I intended to wait by the gate.

## **LESSON 11**

### **THE FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE II**

Participle II may perform various functions in the sentence:

**1. Attribute.**

Participle II, as well as Participle I, can be used in pre-position and in post-position.

*He answered through **the locked door**.*

***The broken cup** was on the floor.*

***The problems discussed** at the meeting were of vital importance.*

An attribute expressed by Participle II may be detached; in this case it often has an additional meaning of an adverbial modifier.

***Accompanied by his father and Ann**, he left the room.*

**2. Adverbial modifier of:**

**a) time.**

In this function Participle II is introduced by the conjunctions *when*, *until* or *while*.

*When questioned she flushed.*

**b) condition.**

In this function Participle II is introduced by the conjunctions *if* or *unless*.

*He will speak for hours unless interrupted.*

**c) comparison.**

In this function Participle II is introduced by the conjunctions *as if* or *as though*.

*As if torn with inner conflict, he cried.*

**d) concession.**

In this function Participle II is introduced by the conjunctions *though* or *although*.

*Her spirit, though crushed, was not broken.*

*Though wounded, the soldier did not leave the battle field.*

**3. Predicative.**

*In spite of himself, Val was impressed.*

*She looks troubled.*

In this function Participle II denotes a state.

**4. Part of complex object.**

*She has found me unaltered, but I have found her changed.*

**5. Part of simple verbal predicate.**

*The books were brought from the school library.*

*I have already finished my composition.*

**Questions:**

1. What functions can Participle II perform in the sentence?
2. Explain the cases when Participle II is used as a part of predicate / predicative / attribute / adverbial modifier.

## EXERCISES

**1. State the functions of the Participle II.**

1. Vegetables grown in hot-houses are not so rich in colour and taste as vegetables grown in natural surroundings. 2. He had a happy look of a man just returned home after a long absence. 3. He looks perplexed and troubled. 4. Beneath the trees lay a thick carpet of fallen leaves turned yellow, red, and brown. 5. Changed into his uniform, he looked younger and slimmer. 6. "I'll get off the train," he repeated as if hypnotized. 7. Arrived at the ship, the passengers were shown their cabins. 8. Finished with his breakfast, he remained for some time at the table. 9. I have never seen him at the club

before; he must be a member recently joined. 10. You seem surprised. 11. He won't stop arguing until interrupted. 12. Deprived of his wife and son by the Spanish adventure, Jolyon found the solitude at Robin Hill intolerable. 13. I shall certainly give evidence on your behalf, if required. 14. John will speak for hours, unless interrupted. 15. Viewed from the air, the sight would have been impressive, no doubt. 16. Defeated, he did not feel discouraged. 17. The red room was a spare chamber, very seldom slept in.

## 2. Translate into English.

А. Ілюстрований журнал; журнал, ілюстрований відомим художником; розбите скло; скло розбите напередодні; зламаний олівець; гілка зламана вітром; схвильовані голоси; діти, схвильовані подією; загублений ключ; ключ, загублений вчора; газети, одержані з Лондона; лист, написаний незнайомим почерком; закриті двері; двері, замкнуті зсередини; дівчина, запрошена на вечір; дерево, що впало; книга, що впала зі столу; вкрадені документи; документи, вкрадені у секретаря; закінчений твір; твір, закінчений поспіхом; хлопчик, переляканий собакою; високорозвинена промислова країна.

В. 1. Вона подивилася на його потертий костюм. 2. Молода жінка здавалась наляканою. 3. Коли її попросили, вона дала свою адресу. 4. Велика прикрашена новорічна ялинка займала весь кут кімнати біля рояля. 5. Він помітив, що вона почервоніла і виглядала збентеженою. 6. В його голосі все ще було невдоволення. 7. Це була худа жінка з блідим обличчям і фарбованим волоссям. 8. Дайте їм мій телефон, якщо у Вас його попросять. 9. У його дядька був давній друг на ім'я Том, який жив в Лондоні. 10. Вона подивилася на нього переляканими очима і вийшла з кімнати, нічого не сказавши. 11. Коли до неї звернулися, вона показала нам найкоротший шлях до вокзалу. 12. Наступного дня ми відправилися за адресою, яку нам дав лікар. 13. Він зміг би зробити значно більше для Вас, якби він був краще інформований. 14. Коли я підійшов до письмового столу, я знайшов на ньому запечатаний конверт. 15. Одержаний від них лист розчарував нас. 16. Опале листя густо вистилало доріжки парку. 17. Вікна їхньої квартири були яскраво освітлені. 18. Скільки часу зберігаються речі, залишені в камері схову? 19. Зворушений її слізьми, він змінив своє рішення. 20. Директор підписав папери, принесені секретарем. 21. Ви повинні вивчити напам'ять текст, який записаний на плівку. 22. Його погляд впав на парасольку, залишену кимось на ганку. 23. Вона завжди охайно одягнена. 24. Я поглянув в її злякане обличчя і побачив сльози на очах.

## LESSON 12

# THE PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE PARTICIPLE

1. The Objective Participle Construction;
2. The Subjective Participle Construction;
3. The Nominative Absolute Participle Construction;
4. The Prepositional Absolute Participle Construction.
5. The Absolute Constructions without a Participle:
  - a) The Nominative Absolute Construction
  - b) The Prepositional Absolute Construction

## THE OBJECTIVE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION

**The Objective Participle Construction** consists of a noun in the Common case or personal pronoun in the objective case and Participle I or Participle II. In the sentence the construction performs the function of the Complex Object.

*She could hear **her grandmother breathing** heavily.*

The Objective Participle Construction may be found after:

- a) verb denoting sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, to notice, to observe, etc.*)

*I heard **my son playing the piano**.* (Participle I)

*I heard **his name mentioned**.* (Participle II)

- b) after verbs of mental activity (*to consider, to understand, etc.*)

*I consider **myself engaged** to Mr. White.*

- c) with verbs denoting wish such as *to want, to wish, to desire*. In this case only Participle II is used.

*The government wants **it done** quickly.*

*I want **the answer sent** at once.*

- d) after the verbs *to have* and *to get*. Only Participle II is used after these verbs.

*I had **my coat altered**.*

*I had **my hair cut**.*

*You can get **your clothes made** in Europe.*

In interrogative and negative sentences the auxiliary verb *to do* is used.

*Why don't you have **your hair waved**?*

**Remember:**

*He mended his shoes.*

*He had **his shoes mended**.*

# THE SUBJECTIVE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION

**The Subjective Participle Construction** consists of a noun in the Common case or personal pronoun in the Nominative case and Participle (mostly Participle I). The peculiarity of this construction is that it does not serve as one part of the sentence: one of its components has the function of the subject, the other forms the part of compound verbal predicate.

*They were heard **talking** together.*

This construction is chiefly used after the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to find, etc.*).

*His **footsteps** were heard **crossing** the room.*

## Questions:

1. Name the predicative constructions with the participle.
2. What does the Objective Participle Construction consist of?
3. What function does the Objective Participle Construction perform in the sentence?
4. When is the Objective Participle Construction used?
5. What does the Subjective Participle Construction consist of?
6. What is the peculiarity of the Subjective Participle Construction?

## EXERCISES

### 1. Point out the Objective Participial Construction.

1. I heard him moving about. 2. When Mary opened her eyes she saw Nina standing by her side. 3. He found her having coffee in the sitting room. 4. She felt her cheeks blushing a little. 5. I noticed Tom standing in the shadow of the fountain. 6. She liked to watch him digging, planting. 7. He felt her arm slipping through his. 8. I am not accustomed to having my word doubted. 9. I want to get the grass cut. 10. Do people have their own photographs taken? 11. I want them moved into one of the houses on the hill. 12. At last she heard her name called. 13. He also kept his hair dyed black. 14. Do you smell something burning? 15. I must have my watch mended. 16. We found him working in the garden. 17. I won't have my best friend laughed at. 18. We must get our tickets registered. 19. We found the door locked. 20. The dog heard his name pronounced through the open door. 21. I've never heard you canary singing. Is there anything matter with the bird? 22. She watched him passing the gate and walking down the street. 23. He found them sitting together and talking peacefully. 24. He felt the

water reaching his knees. 25. She saw him opening the envelope and reading something hastily. 26. Now and then she could hear cars passing. 27. In the room we could see a strange man sitting in an old arm-chair. 27. We saw some people washing clothes in the stream. 28. He wanted his letters posted at once. 29. I don't want my papers looked through. 30. She didn't want the child taken to the hospital. 31. She gave him some papers and said that the client wanted them signed. 32. I want a bedroom repaired for my guests. 33. Would you like your luggage carried upstairs? 34. I want it done as soon as possible. 35. He thought it necessary to have the ceiling in the kitchen whitewashed.

**2. Practise the following according to the model. Use the correct form of *have* (a Complex Object with Participle II *have* + *Object*+ *Participle II*).**

**Model:** *Do you clean your windows yourself? – No I have the windows cleaned.*

1. Do you paint the house yourself? 2. Do you cut the grass yourself? 3. Does she wash her car herself? 4. Does she polish the floor herself? 5. Are you going to shorten your trousers yourself? 6. Do you type the reports yourself? 7. Did you tow the car yourself? 8. Are you going to cut down the trees yourself? 9. Did you repair the clock yourself? 10. Does he tune his piano himself? 11. Does she sweep the stairs herself? 12. Is he teaching his children to ride the bicycle himself? 13. Did he plant the trees himself? 14. Did he build the new garage himself? 15. Did he mend his shoes himself?

**3. Point out the Subjective Participial Construction.**

1. They were heard talking together. 2. The horse was seen descending the hill. 3. Her footsteps were heard crossing the room. 4. John was heard moving about. 5. He was seen working in the garden. 6. The door was left unlocked. 7. The young people were heard singing and shouting from the opposite bank. 8. Rosa's voice could be heard rising above the noise. 9. Each day his short stout figure could be seen going along the corridors. 10. He seemed absorbed by reading a very interesting book. 11. This article was not heard discussed. 12. The noise in the entrance hall continued, and more vehicles could be heard arriving at the door.

**4. Translate into English.**

1. Бачили, як він ішов Трафальгарською площею. 2. Бачили, як таксі чекало когось біля під'їзду. 3. Бачили, як вони піднімалися по сходах. 4. Бачили, як хлопчики з нашої школи грали у футбол. 5. Чутно, як вони про щось розмовляють. 6. Чули, як Джейн відкривала двері. 7. Бачили, як Сомс стояв біля письмового столу і проглядав газету. 8. Чули, як вона співала в сусідній кімнаті. 9. Я відчув, як вона торкається моєї руки. 10. Ми бачили, що вона перепливає річку. 11. Я відчула, що хтось пильно дивиться на мене. 12. Ми чули, як вони весело сміялися у сусідній кімнаті. 13. Я чув,

як син мого сусіда грає на скрипці. 13. Мати стежила, як її молодший син чистить зуби. 14. Він почув, як на вулиці плакала маленька дівчинка. 15. Він помітив, як вони переходять вулицю з двома великими валізами. 16. Учитель помітив, що учні розмовляють. 17. Я хочу пошити нову сукню. 18. Ми помітили, що двоє чоловіків дивно поводяться. 19. Він не хотів, щоб його підстригли. 20. Він хотів, щоб траву на галявині підстригли. 21. Я хочу, щоб цей килим розстелили на підлозі у вітальні. 22. Вона хотіла, щоб її твір перевірили відразу. 23. Ви вже сфотографувалися? 24. Ми любили приходити у цей парк і спостерігати, як граються діти.

## LESSON 13

### THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION

**The Nominative Absolute Participle Construction** consists of a noun in the Common case or personal pronoun in the Nominative case and Participle. The noun or the pronoun is not the subject of the sentence.

In the Nominative Absolute Participle Construction Participle I (in all its forms) or Participle II is used. The construction is generally rendered into Ukrainian by means of an adverbial clause.

In the sentence the Nominative Absolute Participle Construction may perform the function of the **adverbial modifier of:**

**a) time.**

*The sun having risen, (After the sun had risen) they continued their way.*

*This duty completed, he had three months' leave.*

**b) of cause.**

*The professor being ill, (As the professor was ill) the lecture was put off.*

**c) attendant circumstances.** In this function the Nominative Absolute Participle Construction is mostly placed at the end of the sentence.

*One morning he stood in front of the tank window (вікна), his nose almost pressed to the glass.*

**d) condition.** In this function the Nominative Absolute Participle Construction occurs seldom and is almost exclusively used with the participles *permitting* and *failing*.  
*Weather (time, circumstances) permitting, we shall start tomorrow.*

The Nominative Absolute Participle Construction is very often used in fiction and scientific literature; the use of this construction in colloquial speech is rare.

## THE PREPOSITIONAL ABSOLUTE PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION

The Absolute Participle Construction may be introduced by preposition *with* and is then called the **Prepositional Absolute Participle Construction**. It is in most cases used in the function of the **adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances**.

*The girl sat quiet and silent, with her eyes fixed on the ground.*

## THE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT A PARTICIPLE

There are two types of absolute constructions in which we find no participle. The second element of the construction is an adjective, a prepositional phrase or an adverb.

### THE NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION

The Nominative Absolute Construction is used in the function of **adverbial modifier of time or attendant circumstances**.

*Breakfast over, he went to his room.* (adverbial modifier of time)

*There he stood, his face to the south-east... his cap in his hand.* (adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances)

### THE PREPOSITIONAL ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION

The Prepositional Absolute Construction is used in the function of **adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances**.

*I found him ready and waiting for me, with his stick in his hand.*

The Nominative Absolute Participle Constructions and the Nominative Absolute Constructions are separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma or a semicolon.

*He comes and goes pretty often; there being estate business to do.*

*Then he started out, bag and overcoat in hand, to get his cup of coffee.*

The Prepositional Absolute Constructions are usually separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma.

*He was there, with his back towards the door.*

### Absolute Constructions

Function	Nominative Absolute Participial Construction	Nominative Absolute Construction	Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction	Prepositional Absolute Construction

<b>Complex Adverbial Modifier of</b>				
<b>a) Time</b>	<i>The game having ended, the streets were crowded.</i>	<i>The concert over, the lottery came next.</i>	-	-
<b>b) Attendant Circumstances</b>	<i>He stood motionless, his head bent.</i>	<i>He sat on the steps, his hands in his pockets.</i>	<i>He lay in bed, with the light burning.</i>	<i>He was going along the street, with a pipe in his mouth.</i>
<b>c) Cause</b>	<i>I found the house empty, my mother being at the shops.</i>	-	-	-
<b>d) Condition</b>	<i>Conciliation failing, force remains.</i>	-	-	-

### Questions:

1. What does the Nominative Absolute Participial Construction consist of?
2. What function does it perform in the sentence?
3. What does the Nominative Absolute Construction consist of?
4. What function does it perform in the sentence?
5. What does the Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction consist of?
6. What function does it perform in the sentence?
7. What does the Prepositional Absolute Construction consist of?
8. What function does it perform in the sentence?

## EXERCISES

**1. Point out absolute constructions; comment on their functions, translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

A. 1. He reached out across the table, his hand covering Marsha's. 2. Iris stared out over the landscape, her chin cupped in her hand. 3. Old Jolyon stood at the bottom of the bed, his hands folded in front of him. 4. They sat out with a lantern, John telling his tale.

5. He stood by the radio panel, his fingers fixed on the clock. 6. One night, Winifred having gone to the theatre, he sat down with a cigar, to think. 7. He looked at her intently, his curiosity reviving. 8. The novel having been read, she put it aside. 9. The whole building being of wood, it seemed to carry every sound like a drum. 10. He looked through the window, his glance travelling towards the bridge. 11. She hurried out of the car and walked away, tears streaming down her face. 12. Andrew went into the house, with his heart beating fast. 13. The officer sat, with his long fine hands lying on the table perfectly still. 14. He sat on the sofa, his legs crossed. 15. She went on reading, with her eyes fixed on the pages of the book. 16. The door and window of the vacant room being open, we looked in. 17. This duty completed, he had three months' leave. 18. It being late, we took our candles and went upstairs. 19. He turned and went, we following him. 20. Weather permitting, we shall start tomorrow. 21. Tommy walked away, whistling, the dusty old book tucked beneath his arm.

**B.** 1. The weather being cold, he put on his warm woolen overcoat. 2. The weather having changed, we decided to go to the country-side. 3. You can set your mind at ease, all being well. 4. There being no chance to escape, the thief was arrested at the place of the crime. 5. Oliver knocked weakly at the door and, all his strength failing him, sank near the door. 6. The bridge having been swept by the flood, the train was late. 7. The resistance being very high the current in the circuit was very low. 8. The hour being late, she hastened home. 9. Dinner being over, the family assembled in the living room. 10. The constraint caused by the old man's presence having worn off a little, the conversation became livelier. 11. The treaty having been signed, trade was at once resumed. 12. About eleven o'clock, the snow having thawed, and the day being finer and a little warmer than the previous day, we went out to the park for a walk. 13. The fifth of June arriving, they departed. 14. She rose from the bed and removed her coat and stood motionless, her head bent, her hands clasped before her. 15. Ann sat down quickly, her face buried in her hands. 16. Clyde sat up, his eyes fixed not on anything here but rather on the distant scene at the lake. 17. Little Paul sat, with his chin resting on his hand. 18. She stood, with her arms folded. 19. Lonnie stood looking at the lorry rolling away, with his cheeks burning and his fists clenched. 20. Then, with his heart beating fast, she went up and rang the bell. 21. The moonlight road was empty, with the cold wind blowing in their faces. 22. Little Oliver Twist was lying on the ground, with his shirt unbuttoned and his head thrown back. 23. Time permitting, we shall go for a walk to the central park. 24. Mrs. Saddle made the round of the room, candle in her hand, to point out all its beauties. 25. Constantia lay like a statue, her hands by her sides, the sheet up

to her chin. 26. Four seconds later Dixon was on the way out of the hotel into the sunlight, his shilling in his pocket.

## **2. Replace the clauses (subordinate or coordinate) by Absolute participial construction.**

*Model: When the concert was over, the lottery came next. - The concert being over, the lottery came next.*

*He sat and his hands were lying on the table perfectly still. - He sat, with his hands lying on the table perfectly still.*

1. As it was late, he bolted the windows. 2. Everything remained as she left it and the fire was still burning. 3. As the weather was unusually mild at that time of the year, there was no sleighing. 4. With a yell he sprang back and a sweat came on his skin. 5. When the car stopped, the boys jumped out into the grass. 6. If circumstances permit, they will be through with it by the end of May. 7. "Bye", he said and walked away, but his farewell was unanswered. 8. When dinner was served, Mrs. Marlow rang the bell. 9. He went over to the Frenchman, his head was aching from the slap of the bullet and the blood was dripping over the car. 10. As the door was open, the party stepped into a wide stone passage. 11. As it was a hot day, all of us were thirsty. 12. When dinner was over, Carrie went into the bathroom where they could not disturb her and wrote a little note. 13. James was left alone and his ears were standing up like a hare's and fear was creeping about his inwards.

## **3. Translate into English.**

1. Оскільки їхній будинок був зовсім близько, я часто ходила відвідувати їх. 2. Оскільки ніч була холодна, я одягнув тепле пальто. 3. Через те, що стаття була дуже важка, я не змогла перекласти її без вашої допомоги. 4. Погода була чудова і ми вирішили провести вихідні у селі. 5. Якщо погода дозволить, ми підемо на ковзанку. 6. Коли все було готово, вона вирішила відпочити. 7. Оскільки вже було дуже пізно, вони вирішили залишитися у бабусі. 8. Оскільки погода була дуже холодна, Джек вирішив залишитися вдома та почитати цікаву книжку. 9. Тому що швидко темніло, вони поспішили додому. 10. Коли сонце зайшло, відразу стало темно. 11. Оскільки наша розмова була закінчена, я пішов додому. 12. Коли листа було написано, Ніна швидко побігла на пошту відправити його. 13. Якщо погода буде сприятливою, ми зможемо поплавати у річці. 14. Якщо умови дозволять, я приїду до вас на літо. 15. Коли сонце сіло, туристи розпалили вогонь. 16. Оскільки було дуже пізно, збори було закрито.

## LESSON 14

# MODAL VERBS

**Modal verbs** are used to show the speaker's attitude toward the action or state indicated by the infinitive, i.e. they show that the action indicated by the infinitive is considered as possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, advisable, doubtful or uncertain, etc. The modal verbs are: *can* (could), *may* (might), *must*, *should*, *ought*, *shall*, *will*, *would*, *need*, *dare*. The modal expressions *to be* + *Infinitive*, *to have* + *Infinitive* also belong here.

Modal verbs are called **defective** because

a) all of them (except *dare* and *need*) lack verbals and analytical forms (i.e. compound tenses, analytical forms of Subjunctive Mood, the Passive Voice).

b) they do not take *-s* in the third person singular.

c) all of them (except *ought* and sometimes *dare* and *need*) are followed by the infinitive without particle *to*.

d) all of them (except *dare* and *need*) form the negative and interrogative form without the auxiliary *do*.

e) all the modal verbs have two negative forms – a full one and a contracted one:

*should not* – *shouldn't*

*would not* – *wouldn't*

*may not* – *mayn't*

*must not* – *mustn't*

*need not* – *needn't*

*dare not* – *daren't*

*cannot* – *can't*

*shall not* – *shan't*

*will not* – *won't*

## CAN

This modal verb has two forms: *can* for the Present Tense and *could* – for the Past Tense and for the Subjunctive Mood. The expression *to be able to* which has the same meaning can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb *can*.

The modal verb *can* expresses:

### 1. Physical or mental ability.

Mary **can** speak English quite well, but she **can't** write it at all.

*He **could** speak English very well when he was twelve.*

*Soon she **will be able to speak** English quite fluently.*

*He jumped as high as ever he **could**.*

In this meaning *can* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

## 2. Possibility.

a) due to circumstances:

*Anybody **can** make a mistake.*

*You **can** hardly **blame** him for that.*

*You **can** have the book when I have finished it.*

*I **couldn't** take your coat without paying for it.*

*I **could not** go to the theatre yesterday because I was busy.*

b) Due to the existing laws (so-called “theoretical” possibility) :

*The more she studied, the less sure she became, till idly turning the pages, she came to Scotland. People **could be married** there without any of this nonsense.*

*You **cannot** play football in the street (i.e., you have no right).*

In this meaning *can* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

## 3. Permission.

***Can** we go home?*

*The teacher said we **could** go home.*

4. **Prohibition** (it is found only with negative form of the modal verb, as prohibition may be understood as *the negation of permission – not to be allowed to ...*).

It corresponds to Ukrainian не можна, не треба.

*You **can't** cross the street there.*

*You **can't** touch the exhibits in a museum.*

In this meaning *can* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

## 5. Request.

***Can** I have some water, please?*

***Can** you hold a minute, please?*

*Could* suggests a greater degree of politeness:

***Could** you help me, please?*

In this meaning *can / could* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

## 6. Incredulity, strong doubt, improbability (they are closely connected).

In this meaning *can / could* is used with all the forms of the Infinitive in negative sentences.

*He **can't** be so old. (It's impossible that he is so old.)*

*He **can't** be working at this time. (It's impossible that he is working.)*

*He can't have sent it. (It's impossible that he sent it.)*

*She can't have been waiting for us all this time.*

It corresponds to Ukrainian *не може бути, щоб...*

*Could* is used instead of *can* to express greater doubt. Thus the difference between *can* and *could* is in the degree of expressiveness, *could* showing a greater degree of doubt or incredulity. The time reference is indicated not by the form of the modal verb but of the infinitive.

*Can / could + Indefinite / Continuous Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the present.

*Can / could + Perfect / Perfect Continuous Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the past.

7. **Surprise, astonishment**, when *can / could* is used in interrogative sentences. It corresponds to the Ukrainian *невже...* In this meaning *can / could* is used with all the forms of the Infinitive in negative sentences.

*Can he be her father?*

*Can she be waiting for us?*

To refer the action to the past a Perfect or Perfect Continuous Infinitive is used.

*Could he have known her before?*

*Could he have been telling her the truth?*

**Note:** The Ukrainian negative sentence of the type – *невже він не...* can be translated into English in different ways:

a) by complex sentences:

*Can it be that you haven't seen him? – Невже ви його не бачили?*

b) by different lexical means:

*Can you have failed to see him? - Невже ви його не бачили?*

*Can you dislike the book? – Невже вам не подобається ця книжка?*

*Can nobody have seen him? – Невже ніхто його не бачив?*

*Can he have never written that letter? – Невже він так і не написав той лист?*

c) by a statement with the modal word *surely*:

*Surely you've seen him.*

8. **Reproach**, a suggestion that a person should have done something, behaved in a certain way. This meaning is found only with the form *could* and Perfect Infinitive.

*You could at least have met me at the station.*

*You could have helped me.*

9. **Purpose**. This meaning occurs only with the form *could* in clauses of purpose.

*I wrote down the telephone number so that I could remember it.*

10. In the Conditional sentences of the II type *could* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive, and in the Conditional sentences of the III type *could* is used with the Perfect Infinitive in the Principal clause.

*If he tried, he **could** succeed.*

*If he had tried, he **could have** succeeded.*

**Note some set expressions with the modal verb *can*:**

*Cannot / can't help doing smth. – Не можу не робити щось...*

*When I saw him I couldn't help laughing.*

*Cannot / can't but do smth. – Не можу не...*

*I cannot but suggest.*

*We cannot but hope he is right. - Нам залишається лише сподіватися, що...*

*We cannot but wonder - Не можна не замислитися.*

*They are as pleased as can be. - Вони страшенно задоволені.*

*It's as ugly as can be- Це надзвичайно потворно.*

**Questions:**

1. What do modal verbs show?
2. Why are modal verbs called defective verbs sometimes?
3. Name the modal verbs in the Modern English language.
4. What does the modal verb *can* express?
5. What is the synonym of the modal verb *can*?

## EXERCISES

**1. Comment on the use of the modal verb *can/could*. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. I can't accept your invitation this year; we have already made our plans. 2. You can take 20 kilograms without paying extra if you go by plane. 3. Could you swim when you were a child and can you swim now? 4. You can't cross the street when the light is red. 5. You could have let me know you were not coming. 6. Could you give us a consultation tomorrow? 7. Your son is much better now. You can take him to the polyclinic for a final check up. 8. If my mother were with us, she could help us so much. 9. If my parents had not gone away, my little brother wouldn't have fallen ill and could have been the same gay and lovely boy. 10. You can go, if you want, but could you leave the boy here? 11. The boy asked if he could have some more apples. 12. But for

his illness, he could have got there in time. 13. Could you give a glass of cold water, please? 14. Can it really be you? 15. Children can't play with matches. 16. Oh, you can't have done it! 17. He wasn't old; he couldn't have been more than fifty. 18. You can cut my moustache, too. 19. You could at least have come earlier. 20. He can't be sleeping at this time. 21. I couldn't do it; it was really difficult for me. 22. At that time a man could be sentenced to death for a small crime. 23. One can't touch exhibits in a museum. 24. She couldn't help crying. 25. Who can swim? 26. Can I use your dictionary? – I'm afraid, you can't. I need it myself. 27. We cannot but hope he is right. 28. They couldn't translate such texts last year. 29. She can't be so old. 30. I wish you could have come. 31. I can't understand him; he speaks so fluently. 32. I wish I could go with you. 33. One can't finish this work in an hour. 34. Can it be that you haven't known him before? 35. Can nobody have read this book?

**2. Answer the following questions using *can/could* expressing ability (capability) and possibility due to the circumstances.**

1. Can you bring down the fever within a day or two? 2. How can you cure a person of a headache (a cold, stomachache, earache)? 3. Can a person live with a temperature of one hundred and two? 4. How can you get in touch with the local doctor? 5. What instructions can a doctor give to the patient who seems to be suffering from all the illnesses imaginable? 6. What precautions against a cold can a person take? 7. What pieces of advice can you give to a person who wants to lose (gain) some weight?

**3. Respond the following request with a refusal.**

*Example: Shall we have a game of chess? – But I can't play chess.*

1. Shall we play a set of tennis after classes? 2. Shall we skate after classes? 3. Will you teach my daughter to knit? 4. Will you teach me to embroider? 5. Will you teach my sister to bake cakes? 6. Will you teach me to repair watches? 7. Will you draw something for my son? 8. Will you play the piano? 9. Let's play a set of table tennis. 10. Let's play badminton.

**4. Use the modal verb *can (can't)* to express prohibition.**

1. Your friend is coughing and sneezing, but is going to the skating rink. 2. The boys are playing football in the middle of the street. 3. The young girl is using very much make-up and is fond of smoking. 4. The boy has bought ten ice creams and is going to eat them all at once. 5. Your friend has a weak heart but is going to spend her vacation during the hot summer month in the South.

### **5. Express improbability. Motivate it.**

*Example: It's impossible that Nina should have missed an English lesson. – No, she can't have missed. It's not like her.*

1. It's impossible that Irene should have refused to take part in this concert. 2. It's impossible that Ann should have been rude to her mother. 3. It's impossible that Boris should have offended his little brother. 4. It's impossible that Andrew should have given up sport. 5. It's impossible that Nina should have refused to take part in the competition. 6. It's impossible that Helen should have overslept. 7. It's impossible that she should have cried so much. 8. It's impossible that he should have lost the key. 9. It's impossible that Olga should have broken her promise.

### **6. Express improbability according to the example.**

*Example: Irene has refused to take part in the concert. – She can't have refused to do it. It's not like her.*

1. Andrew has refused to take part in the competition. 2. Boris has given up smoking. 3. Lena has given up tennis. 4. Olga has missed the train. 5. Helen has lost her key. 6. Nick has offended his little sister. 7. Ann has been rude to her mother. 8. Olga has been late for classes. 9. Nina has overslept. 10. Andrew has failed to translate this text. 11. Nick has failed to repair his watch. 12. Ben has been waiting for 20 minutes. 13. Alice is telling the truth.

### **7. Express improbability according to the example.**

*Example: It's impossible that Olga shouldn't have learnt the poem. – No, she can't have failed to do it. It's not like her.*

1. It's impossible that Nina shouldn't have agreed to take part in this concert. 2. It's impossible that Andrew shouldn't have come in time. 3. It's impossible that Helen shouldn't have managed to translate this text. 4. It's impossible that your sister shouldn't have visited her sick brother. 5. It's impossible that Oleh shouldn't have repaired his watch. 6. It's impossible that Nick shouldn't have prepared for the seminar. 7. It's impossible that Peter shouldn't have bought such a dictionary. 8. It's impossible that your brother shouldn't have watched this football match. 9. It's impossible that Olga shouldn't have missed some lessons. 10. It's impossible that your mother shouldn't have visited this exhibition.

### **8. Express improbability motivating it.**

*Example: This is Nina's vocabulary. – It can't be hers. Her handwriting is quite different.*

1. The boys in the photo are twins (not to look like each other). 2. The woman in

the photo is my mother (not to look like you). 3. The gentleman in the photo is my brother (not to look like you). 4. My grandfather is 70, but he reads newspapers without spectacles (to be too old). 5. My friend is 5 years older than I am (to look the same age). 6. Her husband is 5 years younger than she is (to look the same age). 7. My brother can make tasty cakes (to be a fellow). 8. My son can repair TV sets (to be too young). 9. My daughter remembers a song from the first time she hears it (to be too difficult). 10. Nina often oversleeps (to be an early riser).

### **9. Express doubt.**

*Example: This is Nina's vocabulary. – Can it be hers? Her handwriting is different.*

1. The boys in the photo are twins (not to look like each other). 2. The woman in the photo is my mother (not to look like you). 3. The gentleman in the photo is my brother (not to look like you). 4. My grandfather is 70, but he reads newspapers without spectacles (to be too old). 5. My friend is 5 years older than I am (to look the same age). 6. My grandson speaks English (to be too young). 7. She is telling lies (never to tell lies). 8. Olga often oversleeps and is late for classes (to be very diligent). 9. He often offends little children (to be calm). 10. Nina often loses her temper (to be composed).

### **10. Use the modal verb *can* in the Subjunctive Mood.**

*Example: I can play the piano. – But I can't. I could play the piano if I hadn't been lazy in my childhood.*

1. I can swim (to go to the river more often). 2 I can skate (to go to the skating rink more often). 3. I can skate (to have a skating-rink in my native town). 4. I can ride a horse (to have a horse at home). 5. I can ride a horse (to be braver in my childhood). 6. I can speak English (to learn English at school). 7. I can make cakes (to be taught by somebody). 8. I can go for a walk (to be permitted). 9. I can go on an excursion (not to be ill). 10. I can buy this dictionary (to have money). 11. We can spend the week-end in the open air (the weather to be fine). 12. I can translate this article (to have a dictionary).

### **11. Complete the following sentences using *could* to express unreal actions referring to the present, future or to the past.**

1. If I had stayed in bed for three days at least ...
2. If I had a sore throat ...
3. If the temperature had been high yesterday morning ....
4. If I were a doctor (a president of a big company, a king/queen) ...
5. If I had enough money ...
6. If I had had enough money yesterday ...

7. If I were less careless ...
8. If I had joined my friends last weekend...
9. If I had entered Kyiv Shevchenko National University...
10. If I had time ...
11. If I were Minister of Education ...

**12. Make the following sentences hypothetic by changing the form of the modal verb. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

*Example: I can do it tonight. – Я можу зробити це сьогодні ввечері.*

*I could do it tonight. – Я б могла це зробити сьогодні ввечері.*

1. He can help you. 2. Of course, I can translate the text. 3. I think I can show you how to do it. 4. You can go and tell her about it. 5. You can always go to someone else. 6. She can see a doctor about it. 7. He can easily get there in twenty minutes. 8. No one can do it in this time. 9. I suppose she can get there in half an hour. 10. I can take this book in the library.

**13. Make the following sentences hypothetic by changing the form of the modal verb and the infinitive.**

*Example: I can do everything myself. – I could have done everything myself.*

1. You can wear your mother's shoes. 2. Nobody can do it better. 3. Hanna cannot believe her eyes. 4. You can reach the hotel in five minutes. 5. You can play in the garden. 6. You can tell her the truth. 7. You can work in my room. 8. You can invite her too. 9. I can take your sister to the kindergarten. 10. We can play a game of chess.

**14. Express strong improbability according to the example.**

*Example: He didn't notice me. – He couldn't have failed to notice you.*

1. You did not understand me. 2. She did not like the play. 3. They did not trust him. 4. They did not find him there. 5. She did not notice the mistake. 6. They did not receive the telegramme in time. 7. They didn't realize the full significance of the event. 8. He did not see you. 9. She did not lose the sight of them in the crowd. 10. They didn't notice us.

**15. Express reproach by changing the form of the infinitive and that of the modal verb, if necessary.**

*Example: You can invite them too. – You could have invited them too.*

1. You could speak to him yesterday. 2. You can take this book in the library. 3. You can ring her up. 4. You could send a telegramme. 5. You can let us know. 6. You can explain everything. 7. You can follow his advice. 8. You can warn us.

**16. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to the different ways of rendering double negation (by complex sentences, lexical meanings, etc.).**

1. Я не міг не піти туди. 2. Мені нічого іншого не залишалось, як сказати йому всю правду. 3. Ви не могли не побачити їх там. 4. Ми не могли не повірити йому. 5. Він не міг не почути мене. 6. Я просто не можу не зробити це, я пообіцяв. 7. Ми не могли не розсміятися. 8. Вона не могла не заплакати. 9. Йому не могла не сподобатися ця картина, він любить пейзажі. 10. Вони не могли не одержати телеграму до цих пір. Ми послали її два тижні тому. 11. Вони не могли не знати про це, їх попереджали. 12. Я не могла не запросити його.

**17. Translate the following sentences into English using the modal verb *can* in all of its possible meanings.**

1. Невже це дійсно так? 2. Тут не можна переходити вулицю. 3. Невже уже так пізно? 4. Не міг він вам цього сказати. 5. Можете взяти цей словник із собою. 6. Олівцем писати не можна. 7. Не могли б ви дати мені ваш олівець на хвилинку? 8. Я міг би купити вам цю книгу, якби я знав, що вона вам потрібна. 9. Чи не могли б ви трохи зачекати? 10. Можете закінчити цю вправу вдома. 11. Звичайно, він міг би тобі допомогти. 12. Я можу зробити це сьогодні ввечері. 13. Я думаю, я б могла показати вам, як це робити. 14. Я не можу зрозуміти, що він має на увазі. 15. Я не могла повірити своїм очам. 16. Шкода, що його немає вдома. Він міг би допомогти нам. 17. Невже він лікар? 18. Невже вона говорить правду? 19. Невже він не побачив нас? 20. Він не міг не помітити нас. 21. Невже вони програли? 22. Не могли вони програти. 23. Не може доросла людина говорити такі речі. 24. Невже так холодно? 25. Невже було так холодно? 26. Невже ви вірите йому? 27. Не можу повірити, що він ваш син. 28. Ви вмієте плавати? 29. Він міг би закінчити цю вправу ще вчора. 30. Невже їй не подобається ця ваза? 31. Він не міг не відповісти на цей лист. 32. Не може бути, щоб вона вам про це не розповіла. 33. Не могли б ви зайти трохи пізніше? 34. Ви не могли бачити його там, він зараз хворий. 35. Невже ми пройшли п'ять кілометрів? 36. Чому ти промовчав? Я міг би допомогти тобі. 37. Він не міг забути вашу адресу, адже він був тут багато разів. 38. Я був би вам дуже вдячний, якби ви дали мені свій словник на декілька днів. 39. Він не міг прочитати цю книгу так швидко. Я ніде не можу знайти такий словник. 40. Не може бути, щоб вона не знайшла цю книгу, її можна знайти в будь-якій бібліотеці. 41. Не може бути, щоб його не попередили. 42. Невже його не попередили? 43. Він не міг не впізнати вас. 44. Невже ви ніколи не бачили його раніше? 45. Невже ніхто його не знає? 46. Не міг він перекласти цей текст, він занадто важкий.

**18. Translate the following sentences into English using the modal verb *can* in all of its possible meanings.**

**A.** 1. Я б не змогла вчора піти в кіно. 2. Я не змогла перекласти статтю без словника. 3. Шкода, що його немає вдома. Він би міг допомогти вам. 4. Шкода, що його не було вдома. Він би міг допомогти вам. 5. Він міг розв'язувати такі задачі, коли йому було 10 років. 6. Я впевнена, він зміг би розв'язати таку задачу. 7. Міг би він мене навчити вимовляти цей звук? 8. Він міг навчити її вимовляти цей звук вірно лише тому, що вона сумлінно працювала. 9. Ніхто не зміг би навчити її вірно вимовляти, тому що вона зовсім не хотіла вчитися. 10. Шкода, що погода погана, а то я б могла показати вам такі гарні місця у нашому парку. 11. Шкода, що погода була погана, а то я б могла погуляти у парку. 12. Погода була гарна, і ми могли гуляти в парку кожного дня. 13. Погода дуже гарна, і ми могли б піти погуляти без пальта. 14. Невже ви його не побачили? 15. Він не міг цього не помітити. 16. Невже вони про це не дізналися? 17. Не міг він усього сказати. 18. Не може бути, щоб він вразив вас. 19. Не може доросла людина любити такі книжки. 20. Не може такого бути, щоб вона розповіла вам про це. 21. Не може такого бути, щоб вона не розповіла вам про це. 22. Невже він цьому вірить? 23. Невже він не вірить цьому? 24. Невже ж так було холодно? 25. Невже він допоміг тобі?

**B.** 1. В цю кімнату заходити не можна, там зараз іде екзамен. 2. Ви можете забрати рецепт і ліки, вони вже годину як готові. 3. Ці ліки могли б бути йому дуже корисні. 4. Можна мені посидіти коло ліжка хворого? 5. Невже це Джон Сміт? Не бачив його цілу вічність. 6. Невже він захворів на запалення легень? 7. Не може бути щоб хворий пішов на прогулянку сам. 8. Не могли б ви показати мені дорогу до торговельного центру? 9. Ви можете провідати хворого товариша тільки завтра. 10. Не може бути, щоб він забув випити свої ліки. 11. Хіба він провів літні канікули в Криму? Не може цього бути. 12. Хто б міг подумати, що він не прийде? 13. Невже ти мене так довго чекаєш? 14. Ти міг би сповістити мене, що не прийдеш вчасно. 15. Не могли б ви доглянути хворого в мою відсутність?

## LESSON 15

### MAY

This modal verb has two forms: *may* for the Present Tense and *might* for the Past Tense. The expressions *to be allowed* and *to be permitted*, which have the same meaning can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb *may*.

The modal verb *may* expresses:

1. **Permission.** In this usage it expresses the meaning *to have permission to, to be allowed to, to be permitted to*. In this meaning *may* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

*You may go now. (You are allowed to go.)*

*May we leave it with you? (Are we allowed to...? Are we permitted to...?)*

*Might* is used in polite requests for permission.

*Might I use your telephone, please?*

*I wonder if I might borrow your book.*

As it has been mentioned, *can* also often expresses permission but of a different kind: e.g., *You may take the book* means that the speaker gives the permission; *You can take the book* means that there are no conditions that prevent the person from taking the book.

Very often the negative answer to the question containing a request for permission (*may*) is *don't* or *must not*.

*May I read the letter? – No, don't, please.*

*Don't* is less strict than *may not*, it is rather asking somebody not to do something than actually prohibiting something, which is expressed by *may not*.

*Must not* means that it is not the person who prohibits the action, but there are facts, rules, or circumstances prohibiting it.

*You must not smoke so much.*

2. **Possibility due to the circumstances** (the so-called “factual possibility”). This meaning occurs only in affirmative sentences. In this meaning *may* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

*You may find all the books you want at the central city library. (It is possible that you will find...)*

*The railways may be improved. (It is possible that the railways will be improved.)*

“Factual possibility” (*may*) is “stronger” than “theoretical possibility” (*can*). Thus the above sentence could suggest there are definite plans for improvement. *May* expressing possibility is replaced by *can* in interrogative and negative sentences.

3. **Prohibition** (only with negative form of the modal verb). In this meaning *may* is used with the Indefinite Infinitive **only**.

*You **may not go** swimming. (You are not allowed to.) – He **смиї**...*

*You **may not enter** the room until I say so.*

The contracted form *mayn't* is very rare.

4. **Supposition, uncertainty.** *May / might* in this sense is synonymous with *perhaps* or *maybe*, and occurs in affirmative and negative statements. In this meaning *may* is used with all the forms of the Infinitive. The Perfect Infinitive indicates reference to the past.

*This news is so strange that you **may not believe** it. (Perhaps you won't believe it.)*

*He **may come** or **may not**.*

*She **may not know** that you are here.*

*For all I know, she **may have been waiting** for hours.*

*Why aren't you at the station? They **may be arriving**.*

*A Forsyte **might perhaps still be living** in that house, to guard it jealously.*

5. **Reproach.** This meaning is found only in affirmative sentences and only with the form *might* as it is a reproach made about something that has not been done and thus implies some hypothetical wish.

*You **might at least offer** to help.*

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive it renders irritation (annoyance) that the action was not carried out.

*You **might have opened** the door for me.*

### Questions:

1. What does the modal verb *may* express?
2. What are the synonyms of the modal verb *may*?

## EXERCISES

**1. Comment on the use of the modal verb *may/might*. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.**

1. He may have fallen ill. 2. Might we join you? 3. You might carry this parcel for me. 4. You might just as well not do it at all. 5. Sit here so that I might see your face. 6. She may come or may not. 7. He said that I might use all his books. 8. It may rain tonight. 9. You may see him every morning walking with his child. 10. In this museum one may see much of interest. 11. You might be a little more attentive. 12. She might have gone before

you arrived. 13. It is a very popular song now, you may hear it everywhere. 14. May I trouble you for the salt? 15. You might have written this letter without my reminding you. 16. The news is so strange that you may not believe. 17. You may not enter this room until I say so. 18. I wonder if I may borrow your dictionary. 19. May I leave my children with you? 20. Might I speak to him now? 21. They may come a little later. 22. You may find this book at any library. 23. He asked me if he might join us. 24. I think he might be doing his lessons now. 25. You might at least have offered to help. 26. Certainly, a great deal may be done by means of cheap entertainment. 27. He may have written this letter, but the signature is certainly not his. 28. It might have been worse. 29. You might have asked me if I had an objection. 30. May I come and see you?

## **2. Express the factual possibility of the action.**

*Example: I want to buy such a pad. – You may buy it at any book-shop of your town (there is no obstacle to an action).*

1. I have always wanted to have such a dictionary (to buy it at the nearest book-shop). 2. I want to see the film you are talking about (to see in the cinema “Cosmos”). 3. I want to have my hair done like yours (to have it done at any hairdresser’s of the town). 4. I want to have my watch repaired (to have it repaired at any watchmaker’s). 5. I want to have my shoes repaired (to have them repaired at any shoemaker’s). 6. I want some medicine for a headache (to buy it at any chemist’s). 7. I’m afraid I shall be late for the classes (to order a taxi by telephone). 8. I have a terrible headache (to take some medicine for a headache). 9. I would like to see him and his family (to pay a visit). 10. I would like to invite him to this party, but it’s too late (to send a telegramme).

## **3. Express supposition and motivate it.**

*Example: You brother is sleeping now. – He may be sleeping. He always sleeps at this time.*

1. Olga has a piano at home (to play the piano). 2. Helen has a rich collection of Ukrainian books (to like Ukrainian literature). 3. Irene has a niece in Kyiv (to have many relatives in Kyiv). 4. Ann has beautiful roses in the garden (to be fond of gardening). 5. Nina’s friend has a kitten at home (to be fond of domestic animals). 6. Your sister is doing the room now (always to do the flat at this time). 7. Your grandmother is having a walk now (always to walk at this time). 8. My friend is working at the language laboratory now (always to work at the language laboratory at this time). 9. Your mother is doing shopping now (always to do shopping at this time). 10. Your granny is knitting now (always to knit in the evening). 11. Your younger brother is having a music lesson now (always to have a music lesson at this time). 12. Don’t you know where Nick is now? (to be in the club).

#### **4. Express supposition referring to the past.**

*Example: We were planning to go to the cinema last night, but my friend didn't turn up. I don't know what has happened. – She might have fallen ill (might have confused the days; might have come back from the University too late; might have been kept at the office).*

1. My neighbour was very angry with his son yesterday. What do you think the matter was? (to get a bad mark at school; to break the window; to lose the key; to have a fight at school). 2. My sister was late for the concert yesterday. Do you know why? (to be kept at work; to take the wrong bus; to lose the ticket). 3. My friend's son failed his last exam. Why do you think he didn't pass it? (to miss many classes; to work by fits and starts; to have a difficult examination card). 4. We didn't enjoy the film yesterday. Could you guess why not? (to be dull; to have bad seats; to have talkative neighbours). 5. We didn't enjoy the picnic. Could you guess why not? (to be rainy; to fail to find a good place; to fail to take fishing rods). 6. Yesterday an accident took place in our street. What do you think caused it? (to be driving at a very high speed; to be drunk; to be slippery; to be foggy; to cross the street in the wrong place). 7. Ben did not take part in the volleyball competition. Do you know why not? (to fall ill; to have high temperature; not to be in town). 8. We did not like yesterday's show. Can you guess why not? (not to be staged well; to be dull; to have one's seats in the balcony). 9. Nina is out. Don't you know where she is? (to go to the park; to go shopping; to go for a walk with her friend; to have a date with her boy friend). 10. Ann missed a lesson yesterday. Don't you know why? (to catch a bad cold; to go to see a doctor; to go to the dentist's; to oversleep).

#### **5. Express reproach.**

*Example: Dan often crosses streets in the wrong place. – Dan, you might be more careful.*

*Yesterday Dan started fighting with his classmates. – You might have interfered.*

1. Ann always leaves her textbooks at home (to be less forgetful; to be more careful). 2. Ann often keeps silent when something is being discussed (to be more active and talkative; to be less shy). 3. Helen never does what she is asked to do by her parents (to be more obedient). 4. My mother usually buys more food than we need and then she throws it out (to be more practical and economical). 5. I usually feel out of place with strangers (to be more sociable, to be less shy). 6. My aunt had a terrible headache yesterday and I didn't know how to help her (to take her for a walk). 7. My neighbour told me that her son was running a high temperature and there was nobody to go to the chemist's (you to go to the chemist's). 8. Once a little boy was lost at the big shopping centre. He came up to me for a piece of advice, but I didn't know how to help him (to

take him to the manager). 9. Once in summer on the beach a woman had a sunstroke and I didn't know how to help her (to take her to the shady place, to call the ambulance). 10. Once in the street an old man fell down. He was unconscious. I didn't know how to help him (to call an ambulance).

**6. Translate the following sentences into English using the modal verb *may* in all its possible meanings.**

1. Ви можете зачекати? 2. Можна мені вас зачекати? 3. Ти міг би побути вдома, хоча б один вечір на тиждень. 4. Він, мабуть, уже пішов. 5. Можливо, він ще чекає. 6. Не смій заходити сюди, чуєш? 7. Ти міг би відразу сказати, що не підеш з нами. 8. Студенти можуть одержати ці книги в бібліотеці. 9. Інколи, в ясну погоду, звідси можна побачити море. 10. Чи можу я допомогти вам чим-небудь? 11. Вона могла уже приїхати. 12. Вона могла б уже приїхати. 13. Він може заскочити сюди по дорозі додому. 14. Ви могли б сказати про це вчора. 15. Чи не могли б ви прийти завтра? 16. Можливо, він уже подзвонив їй. 17. Ти міг би подзвонити мені. 18. Ви можете піти туди пішки, це зовсім недалеко. 19. Я не знаю де мій ключ. Я могла загубити його. 20. Він сказав, що я можу піти туди завтра. 21. Ти міг би вчинити так? 22. Я спитав, чи можу я взяти його книгу. 23. Чи можу я спитати вас, де знаходиться ця установа? 24. Може так трапитися, що він запізниться. 25. Можливо, це дуже важке питання. 26. Було зроблено менше, ніж можна було чекати. 27. Але те, що ви говорите, може бути неправдою. 28. Не смій брати цей журнал, він не мій. 29. Але ж ти не був дуже зайнятий. Ти міг би нам допомогти. 30. Запитай батька, чи можуть діти подивитися цей фільм. 31. Він міг би зробити це для вас, але він не захотів. 32. Ти міг розбити вазу. 33. Вона, можливо, знає іспанську мову. 34. Можливо, вони вже працюють над цією проблемою. 35. Їх, можливо, не було вдома вчора. 36. Можливо, він зараз в офісі і чекає нас. 37. Вона, можливо, подумала, що ми не прийдемо в такий дощ. 38. Ми, мабуть, підемо. 39. Можна подивитися вашу роботу? 40. Він може бути там завтра. 41. Можливо, він був там вчора. 42. Можливо, вона і була на цьому концерті. 43. Він, мабуть, все ще працює в лабораторії. 44. Ви могли б уже і повернути цю книгу. 45. Можливо, я не згадував про це в своїх листах. 46. Можливо, ви уже чули це ім'я.

**7. Fill in the blanks with the modal verbs *can* or *may* in the correct form.**

1. I ... be away from home tomorrow. 2. It ... or ... not be true. 3. It was very dark, we ... see nothing. 4. ...you lend me ten dollars? 5. ... you hear what he is saying? 6. You ... walk miles in this district without seeing a house. 7. ...it be true? 8. Mother says I ... go

out. 9. Mother said I ... not go out. 10. Sorry, sir, you ... smoke here. 11. It ...not be so far. 12. ... I have another book? 13. You ... have written this letter long ago. 14. ... I come and see you? 15. He ... be lying and waiting for you. 16. You. ... have come an hour ago. 17. Alcoholic liquors ... not be sold without a license. 18. When they told me I was cured and ... go, I ... tell you I was more afraid than glad. 19. I knew I .... trust him. 20. Her mother said she ... play with me if she wished. 21. I'm glad you brought your son here. We ... have some fun. 22. When he married her she ...not have been more than sixteen. 23. You have acted very irresponsibly and you ... find yourself in a very serious trouble. 24. Come up to the fire where you ... warm up. 25. I confessed that I ... not swim. 26. Where .... I have met her? 27. He had been through a hard time. He ... have done. 28. What else ... we do for you? 29. My dear, where ... you have got such a foolish idea? 30. ... it be a joke? 31. ... I ask to explain the rule once more? 32. Whenever you ... come, you are always welcome. 33. It was some special occasion. I don't remember. It ... have been my birthday. 34. He ... not have learned the news, that's why he looks as if nothing had happened. 35. You ... have seen him at the meeting. 36. She ... not have failed to notice her mistake. 37. He ... be here at any moment. 38. ... this old lady be Louise? She ... not have changed like that. 39. My neighbour lent me her opera-glasses and I ... fully enjoy the ballet. 40. He said I ... come to him any day I liked. 41. ... I see your wife for a minute? 42. He ... have forgotten our address, he has visited us several times. 43. Don't be angry with her. She ... have done it by mistake. 44. ... you do me a favour? 45. I ... not hear you well.

## LESSON 16

### MUST

This modal verb has only one form for the present tense. It may also be used in reported speech, after the verb in the past tense in the principal clause.

*I knew I **must go** there too.*

The expressions *to have to* and *to be obliged to*, which have the same meaning, can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb *must*.

*And now I **must go** back to my social duties.*

*I felt that I **had to have** the air.*

*Because of the type of the work he was engaged, he **had been obliged to forego** making friends.*

The modal verb *must* expresses:

**1. Obligation, necessity.**

a) due to circumstances (in this meaning it is equivalent to *have to* and is used only with the Indefinite Infinitive in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences):

*He must write. He must earn money.*

*I must go now.*

The absence of necessity is expressed by *need not*.

*Must I go there tomorrow? – Yes, you must. / No, you needn't.*

b) arising out of the nature of man and consequently inevitable.

*All experience tended to show that man must die.*

**2. A command, an urgent (emphatic) request.** In this meaning only Indefinite Infinitive is used.

*You must leave the room at once.*

*You must come to see me every vacation.*

**3. Prohibition.** Such sentences are sometimes negative commands corresponding to the Ukrainian sentence with *не можна, не дозволяється*. In this meaning only Indefinite Infinitive is used.

*The girl mustn't go home alone. It's too late.*

*Cars must not be parked in front of this gate.*

*You must not speak to a prisoner in a foreign language.*

**4. Invitation.** In this meaning only Indefinite Infinitive is used.

*You must come and see me sometimes.*

*You must come and have dinner with us.*

*You must come and see our new picture.*

**5. Probability, supposition (implying assurance).** In this sense the modal verb *must* occurs only in affirmative sentences and corresponds the Ukrainian modal word *напевно*. In this meaning *must* is used with all the forms of the Infinitive. If the action refers to the present the Indefinite Infinitive is used; if the action refers to the past the Perfect Infinitive is used.

*He must be mad. (It seems that he is mad.)*

*He must be lonely. (Probably he is lonely.)*

*I must have seen him before.*

*He must be suffering. Poor man!*

*Is she still waiting? She must have been waiting for hours.*

In the negative sentences supposition is expressed by means of the modal word *evidently*.

*Evidently, he did not know my address.*

Supposition referring to the future cannot be expressed by *must*. The modal word *probably* or the modal expressions *to be likely* are to be used instead.

*She is not likely to come so late.*

*She will probably come tomorrow.*

**Note:** *Must* expressing probability is not used in negative and interrogative forms. There are several ways of expressing negative meaning of probability in such sentences by: negative affixes or negative pronouns or lexically.

1. *You must have misunderstood me.*
2. *You must have been inattentive.*
3. *She must have failed to recognize you.*
4. *He must have had no chance to warn you.*
5. *The letter must have never reached them.*
6. *The letter must have been left unanswered.*
7. *No one must have seen them.*
8. *He must be quite unaware of her coming.*

## EXERCISES

**1. State the meaning of the modal verb *must* in the following sentences. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. "I really don't want you to go". - "I am sorry but I must go." 2. You must not allow your friend to take such a mad step. 3. You must prevent it. 4. "I am afraid I must go now," he said. 5 Her face seems familiar to me; we must have met somewhere. 6. He must be very tired after his journey. 7. Your English is very poor; you must study very hard. 8. Your English is rather good; you must be studying hard. 9. Your English has improved; you must have studied hard during your vacation. 10. This question must be solved immediately. 11. You mustn't stop coming here. 12. Sooner or later one must choose. 13. She must have failed to get in touch with him. 14. He must never have guessed the truth. 15. You must do as you are told. 16. He must be unaware of it. 17. They must have been here since breakfast. 18. She must be thinking of what I have said. 19. Nobody must have seen him enter the hall. 20. Mary must have fallen ill otherwise she would come.

**2. Express probability.**

**Example:** *Olga is always forgetting something. – She must be absent-minded.*

1. Everybody wants to consult Doctor Tkachenko (to be a good specialist). 2. My

daughter is a very good student (to be hard working). 3. This man never laughs no matter what a funny story he is told (to have no sense of humour). 4. My mother is always ready to help everybody no matter how busy she is (to be responsible). 5. Ann always gets up early no matter how late she goes to bed (to be an early riser). 6. My friend believes that everything will come out all right (to be a great optimist). 7. The girl always finds faults with everybody (to be a bore). 8. My father is always ready to speak about any writer or poet (to be well-read). 9. My father never smokes in the presence of a woman (to be well-bred). 10. The woman is watching the film and crying (to be watching something tragic). 11. The man is groaning (to be having a sharp pain). 12. She can't find her gloves (to have lost them). 13. She can speak English very well (to have worked hard for many years). 14. The girl is sleeping and smiling (to be dreaming about something pleasant). 15. They are not at home (to have gone shopping).

### **3. Answer the following questions, expressing the absence of necessity.**

*Example: Must I do it at once? – No, you needn't. You can do it tomorrow.*

1. Must she stay with the child till father comes? (to be big enough to stay alone)  
2. Must we boil the mushrooms first? (to be not poisonous) 3. Must we meet Fred at the station? (to know the way here) 4. Must they take 5.45 train to London? (to take any train) 5. Must she go there again if she doesn't find Mary in? (to leave a note) 6. Must she post this letter by the morning mail? (to post by the evening mail) 7. Must I myself get in touch with him? (the secretary is to do it) 8. Must they come here every day? (to come every other day) 9. Must we be in a hurry? (to have a lot of time) 10. Must I leave? (to be wanted here)

### **4. Express prohibition by using *mustn't*.**

*Example: Children like to play with matches. – Children mustn't play with matches.*

1. Fred is going to park his car where there is a sign saying "No Parking". 2. I want to leave my room for a while. 3. I am going to follow his advice. 4. I got angry with my friend. 5. You make so much noise. 6. I am going to give this book back. 7. I shall tell everybody about your plans. 8. She is going to the Crimea alone. 9. I am going to stay here. 10. She allows her children to go to the park with their friends.

### **5. Translate into Ukrainian using the modal verb *must* in all of its possible meanings.**

1. Ви негайно повинні звернутися до лікаря. Ви дуже погано виглядаєте.  
2. Чия черга? Хто повинен іти за покупками? 3. Я повинен відвезти брату його речі.  
4. Почекай трохи, я повинна дочитати цю статтю. 5. Він, напевно, захворів. 6. Я

повинна поспішати. Уже десята година. 7. Не можна говорити з мамою таким тоном. 8. Необхідно взяти до уваги всі деталі. 9. Ви не повинні дозволяти дітям гуляти на дорозі. 10. Очевидно, вони його знають. 11. Вони, напевно, чекають нас у кафе. 12. Вона, напевно, нічого не знає про ваш приїзд. 13. Діти, напевно, зараз у дитячому садку. 14. Чи повинен я перекласти цю статтю сьогодні? – Ні, ви можете зробити це завтра. 15. Вона, напевно, мене ніколи не любила. 16. Викладач, очевидно, помилково назвав ваше прізвище. 17. Це, напевно, неправда. 18. Ви, очевидно, помилилися. 19. Ця машина, очевидно, вітчизняного виробництва. 20. Ти, напевно, забув свій підручник у класі. 21. Він повинен бути там, я думаю. 22. Магазин, напевно, уже відчинений. 23. Я повинен зробити щось, щоб врятувати його. 24. Він, очевидно, не знає, що вони вже приїхали. 25. Вам не можна сидіти на сонці. 26. Чи мушу я прийти сам? – Ні, ви можете привести свого сина. 27. Йому, напевно, понад сорок. 28. Вам, очевидно, ніхто не говорив про це. 29. Вас, напевно, неправильно зрозуміли. 30. Він, очевидно, не зумів дістати квитки.

## LESSON 17

### TO HAVE (GOT) TO

As a modal verb *to have to* differs from the others in that it is not defective. It can have the category of person and number and all tense-aspect forms. It is followed by a *to-infinitive*.

*As there is no through train to our town we **have to change** in Kyiv.*

*We **had to look** all over the town before we found what we wanted.*

*She **won't have to walk** the whole way, will she?*

*Have to* builds up its interrogative and negative forms with the help of the auxiliary verb *to do*.

*Do you **have to work** so hard?*

*He **didn't have to work** hard. His parents supplied him with money.*

*Have to* combines only with the Indefinite Infinitive.

The modal verb *have to* expresses:

1. **Obligation or necessity** arising out of circumstances. It is similar in its meaning to *must* (1). It corresponds to the Ukrainian *мушу, повинен, маю*.

*She is usually short of time so she **has to go** by air.*

*I have to get up at 5.15 every day as I live far from the University.*

In the past tense *have to* indicates a fulfilled obligation.

*We had to do a lot of things during the week we stayed in the country. (We were obliged and did it.)*

## 2. Absence of necessity.

*You don't have to make another copy of this document, Miss Black.*

*You don't have to stay in here with me, if it bothers you.*

In colloquial English and especially in American English *have got to + Infinitive* is often used in the same meaning as *have to + Infinitive*. This modal expression is used only in the Present Indefinite Tense.

*Dick, we've got to keep awake, we've got to watch things and be ready.*

The negative and interrogative forms are formed without any auxiliary.

*Have you got to do all this work yourself?*

*No, I have not got to do so much work.*

There is a tendency in Modern English to use *got to + Infinitive* in the same meaning.

*You can smile away till you split your cheeks, but you still got to do a day's work to earn a day's wages, and apples don't grow on monkey-trees.*

**Note:** Pay special attention to difference between *I have to tell you something* and *I have something to tell you*.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Analyze the meaning of the verb *to have to* in the following sentences.

1. I have some information to pass on to you. 2. We had to do it again. 3. We shall have to leave at six o'clock. 4. During the accident I had my leg badly hurt. 5. King Lear had three daughters. 6. Is that all you have to say to me? 7. She had to write lots of letters. 8. My sister has a lot of friends. 9. He has just returned. 10. He had to sell his car. 11. She doesn't have to pay for her tickets. 12. I'll have to buy a pair of gloves. 13. I have read this book. 14. She has got to phone her mother. 15. I want to have my hair cut.

### 2. Change the following sentences into the negative and interrogative.

1. He had to sit up late with his work. 2. We'll have to get up very early tomorrow. 3. You'll have to speak to him about it. 4. He has got to go there right now. 5. I had to explain everything. 6. They had to go back alone. 7. She has to come every week. 8. They will have to do what they are told. 9. She had to clean the house herself. 10. We have to start working immediately. 11. I'll have to buy a new dress. 12. He had to work hard.

### 3. Translate into English using the verb *to have to* in its modal meaning.

1. Минулого року я жив недалеко від університету і мені не доводилося вставати дуже рано. 2. Він сказав, що йому доведеться відлучитися на декілька днів. 3. Нам доведеться скласти цей екзамен ще раз. 4. Мені довелося пояснити все декану. 5. Чи довго довелося вам чекати? 6. Їм довелося випити чай без цукру. 7. Я допустила багато помилок в останньому диктанті і мені довелося переписати його. 8. Вам доведеться переглянути свою позицію. 9. Немає необхідності туди йти. 10. Ми були змушені чекати дуже довго. 11. Кому довелося відповідати за це? 12. Боюся, що вам доведеться прийти ще раз, оскільки ваші документи ще не готові. 13. Чому вам доводиться так багато працювати? 14. Кому доводиться вставати дуже рано кожен день? 15. Вам доведеться почекати. Лікар зайнятий. 16. Нам довелося іти пішки, оскільки транспорт уже не працював. 17. Тобі доведеться провітрити кімнату перед сном. 18. Мені часто доводиться мати справу з такими людьми. 19. Хоча тобі й не подобається те, що я говорю, все ж доведеться тобі вислухати мене. 20. Пам'ятай, що тобі доведеться відповідати за всі свої вчинки.

## LESSON 18 TO BE TO

*To be to + Infinitive* is a modal expression. Some of its meanings are close to those of modal verbs and expressions denoting obligations (*must, shall, should, ought, to have to + Infinitive*).

This modal expression can be used in two tenses – the Present Indefinite and the Past Indefinite (*was, were*).

The modal expression *to be to + Infinitive* expresses:

1. **An order** which is generally the result of an arrangement made by one person for another, an arrangement which is not to be discussed. In this case only the Indefinite Infinitive is used.

*You are to go straight to your room. You are to say nothing of this to anyone.*

*He is to return to London tomorrow.*

2. **An obligation, arrangement or agreement**, part of a plan. In this meaning both the Indefinite and the Perfect Infinitive can be used; the Perfect Infinitive shows that the action was not carried out.

*I am to go down in my car and pick up the parcels.*

*I was to meet Nick at the dentist's at 11.*

*She was to have graduated in June, but unfortunately she fell ill.*

### 3. Possibility.

In this meaning the passive form of the Infinitive is used unless it is a question beginning with the interrogative adverb *how*. Here the meaning of *to be to + Infinitive* comes close to that of the verb *can*.

*Such books are not to be bought anywhere.*

*And he knew that higher intellects than those of the Morse circle were to be found in the world.*

*They are not to be trusted.*

*He was nowhere to be found.*

*How are they to know that you are well connected if you do not show it by your costume?*

### 4. Something thought as unavoidable.

*I didn't know at that time that she was to be my wife. - У той час я не знав, що їй судилося стати мою дружиною.*

*As a young man he didn't know that he was to become a famous artist.*

### 5. Strong prohibition (only in negative sentences).

*You are not to do that.*

*You are not to tell anybody about it.*

**Note:** Here are some expressions with the verb *to be to*:

*What am I to do? – Що мені робити?*

*What is to become of me? – Що зі мною буде?*

*Where am I to go? – Куди мені подітися?*

## EXERCISE

**1. Analyze the meaning of the verb *to be to* in the following sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. That night she was to leave for London. 2. You are to live here for the next two months. 3. What is to become of her? 4. Why are you late? You were to come here an hour ago. 5. According to the state plan many new dwelling houses are to be built this year. 6. I didn't know at that time that she was to be my wife. 7. We were to be neighbours. 8. She was to be my friend for many years. 9. They hoped to spend the summer together, but it was not to be. 10. Nobody met me at the station as I was to have arrived a day before.

**2. Combine the modal verb *to be to* with the proper form of the infinitive in the brackets.**

1. Large sums of money are (to spend) on education and medical service. 2. The plane was (to take off) at night, but the weather was too bad. 3. His father was often (to see) in this bar in the company of a young lady. 4. Nobody met them as they were (to arrive) by the ten o'clock train. 5. There is nothing strange in what he did. It was (to expect). 6. Do you think he is (to trust)? 7. What is (to become) of my poor daughter? 8. I did not know that the worst was yet (to happen). 9. We were (to meet) at six, but she didn't turn up. 10. He was (to have) a music lesson in the morning, but the teacher called up to cancel it. 11. Children are not (to touch) anything in the room. 12. You are not (to communicate) with anybody. 13. He was (to come) at eight. It's already half past eight, but he hasn't come yet. 14. He considers that nothing was (to do) under such circumstances. 15. I don't know what has happened. This ship was (to dock) still on Sunday.

**3. Translate the following sentences into English using the verb *to be to*.**

1. Я повинна була прочитати цю книгу ще минулого тижня. 2. Що б ви одягнули, якби вам було потрібно піти в ресторан? 3. Якби вам потрібно було розповісти про себе, як би ви це зробили? 4. Як мені бути? 5. Коли відбудеться їхнє весілля? 6. Не смій виходити! 7. Я гадав, що ж з нами буде. 8. Ми повинні були вирушити в понеділок, але Ніна захворіла і нам довелося відкласти нашу поїзду. 9. Вони планували провести літо разом, але цьому не судилося здійснитися. 10. Їм судилося стати чоловіком і дружиною. 11. Я повинен підготувати все до кінця цього тижня. 12. Я знала, що Джон повинен був прийти в клуб. 13. По радіо оголосили, що ввечері повинен виступити президент. 14. Іден пішла до парку, де вона повинна була зустрітися з Томом. 15. Поїзд повинен відправитися о сьомій.

**4. Translate the following sentences into English using *must, to have to, to be to*.**

1. Я повинна прочитати цю статтю. 2. Ви повинні поговорити з нею, мене вона не послухає. 3. Він, очевидно, знає німецьку мову. 4. Мені довелося йти туди самій. 5. Ви мусите трохи зачекати. 6. Лишайся тут, не смій виходити. 7. Я повинна була зустріти свою тітку на станції, але я не змогла. 8. Ми повинні були чекати її в Одесі, як ми домовилися. 9. Ольга повинна була сказати йому, де нас чекати. 10. Цій жінці судилося стати моєю мачухою. 11. Дивись, іде дощ. Тобі доведеться взяти парасольку. 12. Усі несуть парасольки, очевидно, йде дощ. 13. Вони, напевно, знайомі. 14. Шеф, напевно, забрав всі документи із собою. 15. Діти почали сваритися і мені довелося втрутитися. 16. Не можна тримати книгу так близько біля очей. 17. Що б не сталося, ви не повинні втручатися. 18. Ми повинні були піти туди разом,

але вона не з'явилася. 19. Нам не довелося чекати. Поїзд прийшов вчасно. 20. Моя праска вийшла з ладу, мені доведеться купити нову. 21. Тобі прийдеться позичити гроші, якщо ти хочеш купити новий холодильник. 22. Було холодно, нам довелося розвести вогнище. 23. Я думаю, я повинна повернути частину грошей. 24. П'яту сторінку довелося передруковувати. 25. Це все, що ви повинні були мені сказати?

## LESSON 19

### SHOULD and OUGHT TO

Historically *should* was the past form of *shall* and both the forms expressed obligation. But in present-day English they have developed different meanings and are treated as two different verbs.

*Should* is nearly always interchanged with *ought to*, as their meaning coincide. There is, however, a difference in construction: *should* is followed by the infinitive without particle *to*, but *ought* is followed by the infinitive with particle *to*.

*Should* and *ought to* followed by the non-perfect infinitive may be used with reference to the present and future and are not changed in reported speech.

*Should* and *ought to* are used to express:

1. **Moral obligation or duty** (which is not always fulfilled). It corresponds to the Ukrainian *треба, слід, належить, годиться*.

*All students **should submit** their work by present date (but some of them don't).*

*If you see anything strange, you **should call** the police.*

*You **ought to look** after your children better (you don't always do it).*

*You **ought to be ashamed** of yourself.*

When used with the Perfect infinitive *should* and *ought to* mean that something right has not been done, a desirable action has not been carried out and it, therefore, implies reproach.

*Your shoes are wet. You **should have stayed** at home.*

*You **ought to have helped** him (but you didn't).*

*Ought not to / should + Perfect Infinitive* means that something wrong has been done and it is now too late to change it. It also may be viewed as a reproach.

*You **shouldn't have done** that. It was stupid.*

*You **should never have married**.*

*You **oughtn't to have laughed** at him.*

2. **Advisability, desirability** (this meaning is more common with *ought to* than with *should*).

*You **should** stay in bed. You have a very high temperature. Besides, you **should consult** a doctor.*

*You **should** read this book.*

*You **ought to** see a doctor.*

As seen from the above examples, it is sometimes difficult to discriminate between the first and second meaning.

3. **Probability**, sometimes naturally expected (only with reference to the present or future). It corresponds to Ukrainian *напевно, ймовірно*.

*The effect of the tax **should be felt** in high prices (will probably be felt).*

*If it is a story by Wodehouse, it **should be** amusing.*

*You **ought to be** hungry by now (you probably are, but I am not certain).*

*Apples **ought to grow** well here.*

*If he started at nine, he **ought to be** here by four (he will probably be here by four).*

## EXERCISES

**1. Analyze the meaning of the verb *ought to* in the following sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. I think you ought to come. 2. You know, you oughtn't to eat fish. 3. Such things ought to be attended to at once. 4. You ought to be taking a rest. 5. It's murder, and we ought to stop it. 6. You ought never to have married a woman 18 years younger than yourself. 7. You ought to see a doctor. 8. He ought to be published, oughtn't he? 9. You oughtn't to have mentioned those facts. 10. You ought to feel some regret for your parents.

**2. Respond to the following statements using *ought to*, *oughtn't to* to criticize a past action.**

*Example: Fred had an accident because he drove so fast. – He oughtn't to have driven so fast.*

1. The traffic lights were red but he didn't stop at the crossroads. 2. He was in a hurry, and he didn't pay any attention to the traffic lights. 3. He didn't take the medicine that was prescribed to him. 4. It was his great mistake. He married a very young girl. 5. He felt bad but he didn't go to see the doctor. 6. I didn't telephone Mr. Brown yesterday. 7. She didn't go to visit her sick friend. 8. I didn't let my parents know that I am here. 9. I didn't discuss the problem with my chief. 10. He didn't obey his parents.

**3. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian and analyze the meaning of the verb *should*.**

1. Why should I go there? 2. You shouldn't miss the opportunity. 3. Should I tell my parents about it? 4. He should not be sitting in the sun. 5. You shouldn't have done as you did! 6. How should I know? 7. You should be more careful. 8. You shouldn't be so impatient. 9. Why should I suffer? 10. You should have done it long ago. 11. I shouldn't have missed the chance. 12. I shouldn't have told him this news. 13. You have missed a lot. I should have taken you to the theatre. 14. I should have taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything. 15. He should be more careful about his health. 16. You shouldn't feel so unhappy over such trifles. 17. You should help your friend. He is in trouble. 18. You shouldn't have left London without visiting the National Gallery. 19. They should have never married. 20. Why should I phone him?

**4. Respond to the following statements giving a piece of advice using the modal verb *should*.**

*Example: Her reading is not very good. – She should read more aloud.*

1. I'm afraid you will miss the train (to take a taxi). 2. There is no one in (to try the next door). 3. She may have forgotten about her promise (to phone and remind her). 4. I don't know which hat to take (to take the one which goes with your coat). 5. The child won't eat soup (not to give the child sweets before dinner). 6. The students seemed unable to follow what I was saying (not to speak so fast). 7. The boy is very pale (to play more out-of-doors). 8. My son didn't follow my advice and went out bareheaded and caught a cold (to be more obedient). 9. My friend often misses classes (to attend classes regularly). 10. I'm having trouble with my leg (to see a doctor).

**5. Criticize the actions mentioned in the following statements.**

*Example: I didn't buy the book. – You should have bought it.*

*I took the child with me. – You shouldn't have taken the child with you.*

1. We forgot to leave a message for her. 2. We didn't wait for them. 3. I didn't explain to her how to get there. 4. I didn't put down her address and forgot it. 5. I haven't seen this film. 6. I'm afraid I ate too much cake. 7. The conference was very important but I didn't go to it. 8. I had a good chance to listen to this famous singer but I didn't go to the concert.

**6. Translate into English using the verb *should*.**

1. І чого це я повинен слухати його? 2. Вам слід було сказати нам про це раніше. 3. Ти б краще зробив все сьогодні. 4. Завтра, напевно, погода буде кращою. 5. Чого ради я повинен був їй допомагати? 6. Ти б перечитав цей роман. 7. Треба

було зробити все по-іншому. 8. Вам слід було попередити нас. 9. На мою думку, тобі слід погодитися. 10. Я гадаю, мені не слід відмовлятися від цієї пропозиції. 11. Квіти, напевно, будуть рости тут добре. 12. Треба було розказати про вашу помилку батькам. 13. Треба було повернути направо. 14. Не слід би було залишатися так пізно. 15. Тобі потрібно було раніше довідатися про час роботи музею.

## LESSON 20

### SHALL

*Shall* is never a purely modal verb. It always combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary verb expressing futurity.

As a rule *shall* as a modal verb is not translated into Ukrainian. Its meaning is rendered by emphatic intonation.

As a modal verb *shall* expresses:

1. **Compulsion or strict order.** In this meaning it is always used with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person and has a weak stress.

*She shall go off tomorrow, the little artful creature.*

*It shall be done as you wish.*

In the 1<sup>st</sup> person *shall* in this meaning acquires a strong stress.

*I want that prize and I shall win it.*

2. **Threat or warning.** In this meaning it is also used with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person and has a weak stress.

*You shall repent of this neglect of duty.*

*Tell him he shall be punished for his behaviour.*

In the first two senses *shall* is used in affirmative and negative sentences.

3. **Promise.** In this meaning it is also used with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person and has a weak stress.

*Don't worry you shall have a minute's rest before the meeting.*

*Don't be afraid. You shall not be punished.*

4. **Asking for instructions.** In interrogative sentences *shall* is used in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person to inquire after the wish of the person addressed.

*Shall I shut the door, ma'am?*

*Shall I read the article again?*

*Shall he start speaking on the topic?*

## EXERCISES

**1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian and analyze the meaning of the verb *shall*.**

1. Shall we start? 2. She shall pay for it. 3. You shall have the answer tomorrow. 4. Shall I get you some coffee? 5. Shall I shut the door? 6. You shall repent of this neglect of duty. 7. Don't be afraid, you shall not be punished. 8. You shall fall ill. 9. Shall I wait? 10. How much shall I pay? 11. He shall get his money. 12. Who shall answer the telephone? 13. Anyone found guilty shall be punished at once. 14. He shan't see you. 15. Shall I order a taxi?

**2. Translate into English using the modal verb *shall*.**

1. Ви пошкодуєте, повірте мені. 2. Вам показати як це робити? 3. Відчинити вікно? 4. Зварити тобі каву? 5. Йому зачекати на вас? 6. Як ви думаєте, мені купити цей словник? 7. Ти захворієш. 8. Він зробить, як ви скажете. 9. Ви отримаєте все необхідне. 10. Що робити з цими листами? 11. Куди ж мені тепер іти? 12. Не сумуй, ти отримаєш свою книгу. 13. Починати свою розповідь чи почекати? 14. Не бійтесь, вас не покарають. 15. Мені читати вірш?

## LESSON 21 WILL / WOULD

*Will* is hardly ever a purely modal verb. It generally combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary verb expressing futurity. *Will* has two forms: *will* for the present tense and *would* for the past tense. Thus *will* and *would* are looked upon as forms of the same verb, although in a few cases their meanings differ.

The modal verb *will* expresses:

### 1. Volition, intention, determination.

In most cases it is rendered into Ukrainian by *безумовно, обов'язково*.

*I will write as soon as I can.*

*I will be there to help you.*

This meaning is often found in conditional sentences.

*If you will help me, we can finish by 6 o'clock.. – Якщо ви погодитесь мені допомогти, то ми закінчимо до шостої години.*

If you **will wait** for me, I shall be very grateful.

2. **Refusal** to do something, when *won't* / *wouldn't* is used in negative sentence.

*They **won't go** with us (they refuse to...).*

*I **won't accept** your offer.*

*They **wouldn't listen** to me (they refused to listen to me).*

*He **wouldn't answer** my question.*

3. **A polite request or an offer.** This meaning occurs only in questions.

*Will you **pass** me the salt, please?*

*Will you **have** some tea?*

In comparison with *will* the form *would* renders a greater degree of politeness.

***Would** you please **pass** me the salt?*

***Would** you please **lend** me your pen?*

It is still politer to use the combinations; *Would you mind* + *Gerund*, *Would you be so kind as to ...*

*Would you be so kind as to **lend** me your pen?*

4. **A command** (in military context a strict command).

*You **will do** exactly as I say.*

An impatient command can begin with *will you*.

*Will you **be quiet!** – Та замовкни ти нарешті!*

*Would* is never used in this meaning.

5. **Insistence, resistance.** *Will* is stressed when used in this sense.

*He **will try** to mend it himself (he insists on mending it himself).*

With reference to inanimate objects *will* and *would* shows that a thing fails to perform its function. It occurs in negative statements and corresponds to the Ukrainian *ніяк не*.

*The door **will not open.** – Двері ніяк не відчиняються.*

*The wound **wouldn't heal.** – Рана ніяк не загоювалася.*

6. **Inevitability, or characteristic behaviour, or something naturally expected.**

*Boys **will be** boys. – Хлопці завжди залишаються хлопцями.*

*Truth **will be** out. – Правду не приховаєш.*

*What **will be will be.** – Що буде, то буде.*

7. **Characteristic behaviour or quality.** This meaning is not expressed in Ukrainian.

*Oil **will float** on water.*

*That's exactly like Jocelyn – she **would lose** the key.*

*He **would fish** for hours without catching anything.*

8. **Disapproval of something expected.** In this meaning only *would* is used. It is

found mostly in responses. It corresponds to the Ukrainian *цього варто було очікувати, на нього схоже*.

*He refused to interfere. – He would. - На нього схоже.*

*You would be late. - Безумовно, ти знову запізнився.*

*You would forget. - Безумовно, ви забули.*

9. *Will / would* combined with different forms of the infinitive can express **prediction certainty** about the present or the future (in a similar way to *must*), sometimes that is proved or expected.

*This will be our train. – Напевно, це наш поїзд.*

*That would be he! – Напевно, це він.*

*John will have arrived by now. – Напевно, Джон вже приїхав.*

*That would be in 1910, I think. – Я вважаю, що напевно, це було в 1910 році.*

## EXERCISES

**1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian and analyze the meaning of the modal verbs *will, would*.**

1. You would be late! 2. That would be in 1945, I think. 3. The engine won't start. 4. I will be there to help. 5. Will you have some tea? 6. I can and I will learn it. 7. That will be he! 8. She wouldn't take this medicine. 9. The pen won't write. 10. The kettle won't boil. 11. Will you dine with us? 12. The doctor knows I won't be operated on. 13. This will be the school, I believe. 14. You will go there. 15. Boys will be boys. 16. When I say I will do a thing. 17. I will take care that it shall be all right. 18. Don't worry I will protect you. 19. I will say it again and again. 20. He would smoke a pipe before going to bed. 21. All that I would tell them was that my brother was ill. 22. Shut the door, would you? 23. Will you come round tomorrow? 24. She argued with me, she would not listen to reason. 25. Oil will float on water. 26. He will hear the news. 27. I said I would interfere. 28. The window won't open. 29. She would sit there for hours waiting for the telephone. 30. I won't leave you, I promise.

**2. Translate into English using the modal verbs *will and would*.**

1. Ви зробите це негайно. 2. Вікно не відчинялося. 3. Це, мабуть, моя молодша сестра. 4. Вона не хоче сказати в чому справа. 5. Мабуть, це наш автобус. 6. Цей ніж не ріже. 7. Чи не могли б ви почекати трохи? 8. Чи не могли б ви пересісти? 9. Вона не бажає мене слухати; чи не могли б ви поговорити з нею? 10. Ти зробиш те, що тобі скажуть. 11. Він не бажає відповідати. 12. Ти залишишся

тут і будеш чекати, поки я не повернуся. 13. Це, напевно, її мама. 14. Машина не заводиться, чи не могли б ви допомогти мені? 15. Ви не зробіть так, запам'ятайте це! 16. Я напишу вам, як тільки повернуся. 17. Він не прийме цю пропозицію, побачите. 18. Допоможіть мені, будь ласка. 19. Вип'єте кави? 20. Я часто пишу йому, але він не відповідає.

## LESSON 22

### NEED

The verb *need* may be either a defective (modal) or a regular verb. As a defective verb *need* has only one form and combines with infinitive without particle *to*. In reported speech it remains unchanged. As a regular verb it has the Past Indefinite form *needed* and regular negative and interrogative forms. The regular form is used mainly when the following infinitive denotes habitual action.

*Do I need to show my pass every time?*

*You don't need to say it every time you see me.*

The modal verb *need* expresses:

1. **Necessity.** It is mostly used in negative and interrogative sentences where it is a replacement for *must* or *have to*.

*Need I answer this question?*

*Need she go there?*

*Why need he bother us?*

2. **Absence of Necessity** (in negative sentences).

*You needn't do it now.*

The negation is not always combined with the verb, but may be expressed by other parts of the sentence.

*I don't think we need mention him at all.*

*I need hardly say that you are to blame.*

In negative sentences *need* followed by the Perfect Infinitive indicates that the action expressed by the infinitive was performed but was not necessary. It implies a waste of time or effort, and is therefore translated *даремно, марно, дарма*.

*You needn't have spent all the money. Now we've got nothing left.*

*We needn't have waited for her because she never came at all.*

## DARE

The verb *dare* may be either a defective (modal) or a regular verb. As a defective verb *dare* has two forms: *dare* for the present tense and *dared* for the past tense. It is used chiefly in interrogative and negative sentences. It has the meaning *to have the courage or independence to do smth, to venture*.

*How dare he speak to you like that? (I wonder at such impudence.)*

*Dare you ask him? (Are you brave enough to ask him?)*

*He daren't write anything in case it isn't good. (He hasn't got the courage).*

**Note the following combinations with the modal verb *dare*:**

*I dare say. – I suppose, no doubt.*

*I dare say you are right. – Дуже можливо, що ви праві.*

*A dare say he will come later. – Вважаю, що він прийде пізніше.*

## EXERCISE

**1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian and analyze the meaning of the verb *need*.**

1. Need I come? 2. You needn't be afraid of him. 3. She needn't have done it. 4. We needn't have told him a lie. 5. You needn't have gone into so many details. 6. We needn't argue. 7. You needn't worry about her; she is quite able to take care of herself. 8. You needn't have done the work instead of him. 9. Need I help him? 10. You needn't come. 11. You needn't have come. 12. You needn't have spent the whole day in cooking. 13. You needn't mention her name, as everybody knows her. 13. Need I do this exercise? 14. She needn't have gone to the post office to phone him. 15. We needn't have brought our bathing suits with us.

**2. Translate into English using the modal verb *need*.**

1. Можна не йти туди. 2. Можна було і не йти туди. 3. Можете не переписувати цю вправу. 4. Можете не залишатися. 5. Нам можна і не повторювати ці правила; ми знаємо їх. 6. Дарма ви так хвилювалися. 7. Можна було і не купувати цю книгу. 8. Можете не говорити йому про це. 9. Дарма він пішов туди. 10. Чи є необхідність нагадувати, що екзамени проводяться в кінці кожного семестру? 11. Даремно ви організували новий клуб. 12. Нема необхідності використовувати ці підручники зараз. 13. Чи є необхідність займатися цією роботою? 14. Не треба було брати журнал додому. 15. Навчальний план треба повністю змінити.

## SUMMARY CHART OF MODALS AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS (Azar B.S.)

AUXILIARY	USES	PRESENT/FUTURE	PAST
<i>may</i>	1) polite request (only with <i>I</i> or <i>we</i> ) 2) formal permission  3) less than 50% certainty	May I borrow your pen? You may leave the room. - Where is Jim? - He may be at the library.	He may have been at the library.
<i>might</i>	1) less than 50% certainty  2) polite request (rare)	- Where is Jim? - He might be at the library. Might I borrow your pen?	He might have been at the library
<i>should</i>	1) advisability  2) 90% certainty (expectation)	You should study tonight.  She should do well on the test. ( <i>future only, not present</i> )	You should have studied last night, but you didn't.  She should have done well on the test.
<i>ought to</i>	1) advisability  2) 90% certainty (expectation)	You ought to study tonight.  She ought to do well on the test. ( <i>future only, not present</i> )	You ought to have studied last night, but you didn't. She ought to have done well on the test.
<i>had better</i>	1) advisability with threat of bad result	You had better be on time, or we will leave without you.	( <i>past form uncommon</i> )
<i>be supposed to</i>	1) expectation  2) unfulfilled expectation	Class is supposed to begin at 10:00.	Class was supposed to begin at 10:00, but it didn't begin until 10:30.
<i>must</i>	1) strong necessity  2) prohibition ( <i>negative</i> )	I must go to class today. You must not open that door. Mary isn't in class. She	

	3) 95% certainty	must be sick. ( <i>present only</i> )	Mary must have been sick yesterday.
<i>have to</i>	1) necessity 2) lack of necessity ( <i>negative</i> )	I have to go to class today. I don't have to go to class today.	I had to go to class yesterday. I didn't have to go to class yesterday.
<i>have got to</i>	1) necessity	I have got to go to class today.	
<i>will</i>	1) 100% certainty 2) willingness 3) polite request	He will be here at 6:00. ( <i>future only</i> ) - The phone is ringing. - I will get it. Will you please pass the salt?	
<i>be going to</i>	1) 100% certainty ( <i>prediction</i> ) 2) definite plan ( <i>intention</i> ) 3) unfulfilled intention	He is going to be here at 6:00. ( <i>future only</i> ) I am going to paint my bedroom. ( <i>future only</i> )	I was going to paint my bedroom, but I didn't have time.
<i>can</i>	1) ability/possibility 2) informal permission 3) informal polite request 4) impossibility ( <i>negative only</i> )	I can run fast. You can use my car tomorrow. Can I borrow your pen? That can't be true.	I could swim when I was 5. That can't have been true.
<i>could</i>	1) past ability 2) polite request 3) suggestion ( <i>affirmative only</i> ) 4) less than 50% certainty	Could I borrow your pen? Could you help me? - I need help in math. - You could talk to your teacher. - Where is Jim? - He could be at home.	I could swim when I was 5. You could have talked to your teacher. He could have been at home.

	5) impossibility ( <i>negative only</i> )	That couldn't be true!	That couldn't have been true!
<i>be able to</i>	1) ability	I am able to help you. I will be able to help you.	I was able to help you.
<i>would</i>	1) polite request  2) preference  3) repeated action in the past  4) polite for "want" ( <i>with like</i> ) 5) unfulfilled wish	Would you please pass the salt? Would you mind if I left early? I would rather go to the park than stay at home.  I would like an apple please.	I would rather have gone to the park.  When I was a child I would visit my grandparents every weekend. I would have liked a cookie, but there were none in the house.
<i>used to</i>	1) repeated action in the past  2) past situation that no longer exists		I used to visit my grandparents every weekend. I used to live in Spain. Now I live in Korea.
<i>shall</i>	1) polite question to make a suggestion 2) future with "I" or "we" as subject	Shall I open the window? I shall arrive at nine. ( <i>will = more common</i> )	

## EXERCISE

**Discuss the difference in meaning, if any, in each group of sentences.**

1. a. May I use your phone?  
b. Could I use your phone?  
c. Can I use your phone?
2. a. You should take an English course.  
b. You ought to take an English course.  
c. You are supposed to take an English course.

- d. You must take an English course.
3. a. You should see a doctor about that cut on your arm.  
b. You had better see a doctor about that cut on your arm.  
c. You have to see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
4. a. You must not use that door.  
b. You don't have to use that door.
5. a. I will be at your house by 6 o'clock.  
b. I should be at your house by 6 o'clock.
6. *There is a knock at the door. Who do you suppose it is?*  
a. It might be Sally.  
b. It may be Sally.  
c. It could be Sally.  
d. It must be Sally.
7. *There is a knock at the door. I think it's Mike.*  
a. It may not be Mike.  
b. It couldn't be Mike.  
c. It can't be Mike.
8. *Where is Jack?*  
a. He might have gone home.  
b. He must have gone home.  
c. He had to go home.
9. a. Each student should have health insurance.  
b. Each student must have health insurance.
10. a. If you are having a problem, you could talk to Mr. Anderson.  
b. If you are having a problem, you should talk to Mr. Anderson.
11. a. I've got to go.  
b. I have to go.  
c. I should go.  
d. I am supposed to go.  
e. I'd better go.  
f. I'd rather go.
12. *I needed some help.*  
a. You should have asked Tom.  
b. You could have asked Tom.
13. a. When I was living at home, I would go to the beach every weekend with my friends.  
b. When I was living at home, I used to go to the beach every weekend with my friends.

## REVISION EXERCISES

**1. Translate into English. Express ability and capability using the modal verbs *can/could, may/might*.**

1. Чи могли б ви зайти трохи пізніше? 2. Ви не могли бачити його там вчора, він хворіє. 3. Не може бути, щоб він спізнився. Він завжди такий пунктуальний. 4. Невже ви не можете перекласти це речення? 5. Невже він не повернув вам цю книгу до цих пір? 6. Ви можете зустріти цей вираз у будь-якому тексті. 7. Даруйте, але ви могли б зробити це для мене. 8. Я не можу переконати його. Чи не могли б ви допомогти мені? 9. Ви могли б переконати його, якби хотіли. 10. Можливо, він все знав, але змовчав. 11. Можу я поговорити з деканом? 12. Чи зможу я знайти вас там сьогодні ввечері? 13. Я думаю, ви зможете перекласти цю статтю. У вас достатньо знань. 14. “Можна взяти ваш словник?” – “На жаль, я не можу дати вам свій словник, він мені потрібний сьогодні.” 15. Щось могло трапитися з машиною. Їм давно пора повернутися. 16. Я не вірю, що він міг сказати такі слова. 17. Чи не могли б ви мені допомогти? 18. Я не можу уявити її в ролі вчительки. 19. Я впевнена, що ти міг би зробити це набагато краще. 20. Ця мелодія дуже популярна зараз, її можна почути скрізь. 21. Щось трапилося з телефоном. Я тебе не чую. 22. Можливо, він буде завтра там. 23. Не може бути, щоб вони мене не помітили. 24. Ми не можемо відкласти обговорення цього питання. 25. Ви могли б подумати про це раніше. Тепер я нічим не можу вам допомогти. 26. Невже ви повірили йому? 27. Я не можу зрозуміти, чому він не прийшов. Він не міг забути. 28. Якби ви могли приходити до мене щонеділі. Я міг би допомогти вам вивчити іспанську. 29. Чи не могли б ви повернути цю книгу завтра? 30. Я не можу знайти свою сумочку, я могла забути її в автобусі. 31. Не може бути, щоб він не поїхав. 32. Подумайте, що можна зробити. 33. Думаю, уже нічого не можна зробити. 34. Я не можу піти, не попрощавшись. 35. Невже він не міг допомогти вам? 36. Я просто не можу йти далі, я вже втомилася. 37. Ви можете відпочити трохи, у нас досить часу, не поспішайте. 38. Ви можете пишатися своїм сином. 39. Таким сином можна пишатися. 40. Можливо, вони були там, я міг їх не побачити.

**2. Translate into English. Express ability, capability or permission using the modal verbs *can, may, needn't*.**

1. Не варто одягати нове пальто, йде дощ. 2. Можна мені одягнути нове пальто? 3. “Чи можна прийти і подивитися вашу нову квартиру?” – “Ви можете прийти в будь-який час.” 4. Ти можеш запросити своїх друзів, якщо ти хочеш. 5. Ти можеш дістатися туди пішки. 6. Я не можу співати, у мене болить горло. 7. У мене

болить нога, я не можу іти пішки. 8. Чи можна що небудь зробити? 9. Немає потреби йти туди, уже пізно щось робити. 10. Можна було не йти туди. 11. Можна мені погратися з котом? 12. Можна вийти? 13. Дарма ми брали тент із собою. 14. Чи вміє Том лагодити радіо? 15. Я не можу зрозуміти вашу позицію. 16. Хто не може прийти? Чи можуть усі прийти? 17. Чи можна мені зачекати тут? 18. Можна користуватися словником? 19. Немає потреби брати словник, вам дадуть словники. 20. Можна запросити вас на вальс? 21. Я не вмію танцювати. 22. Ви можете не приходити. Ви можете прислати свого сина. 23. Йому можна не приходити на ці збори. 24. Він міг не приходити на ці збори. 25. Ти можеш не погоджуватись. 26. Немає потреби говорити йому про це. 27. Чи можна мені взяти цю книгу додому? 28. Тобі немає потреби йти до бібліотеки. 29. Ти можеш залишитися вдома. 30. Можна мені прочитати цю телеграму? 31. Ви можете не залишатися, якщо не бажаєте. 32. Дарма ми залишилися. Вечірка була нецікавою. 33. Можна було і не хвилюватися. 34. Дарма я купив цю книгу. Вона є в бібліотеці. 35. Я нічого не можу побачити тут. Дуже темно. 36. Немає потреби переписувати цей текст. Ви можете взяти цю книгу додому. 37. Можна увімкнути світло? 38. Немає потреби вмикати світло, ще видно. 39. Я не можу обійтися без тебе. 40. Невже так холодно? 41. Дарма ви взяли парасольку, дощу не буде. 42. Невже це жарт? 43. Я не можу допомогти вам, нажаль. 44. Невже це ваш син? 45. “Коли я можу прийти?” – “Ви можете прийти в будь-який час.” 46. Я не можу зрозуміти, чому він так і не прийшов. Можливо, він захворів. 47. Побачимо, що можна зробити. 48. Дарма я тобі це кажу. Ти не хочеш мене зрозуміти. 49. Немає потреби готувати вечерю. Ми можемо повечеряти в ресторані. 50. Вона, мабуть, вже спить.

### **3. Translate into English. Express doubt and supposition using the modal verbs *can, may, must*.**

1. Не може бути, щоб він не пішов на риболовлю. 2. Невже він пішов на риболовлю? 3. Невже він уже поїхав? 4. Не може бути, щоб він уже поїхав. 5. Можливо, він уже поїхав. 6. Він, напевно, уже поїхав. 7. Невже він твій брат? 8. Не може він бути твоїм братом, ви зовсім не схожі. 9. Це, очевидно, його брат. 10. Віктора немає. Він, напевно, зараз в університеті. 11. Віктор може зараз чекати мене в університеті. 12. Невже він все ще чекає мене? 13. Лист, очевидно, так і не дійшов до нього. 14. Можливо, він прийде, а може й ні. 15. Невже йде дощ? 16. Невже буде дощ? 17. Вночі, напевно, був дощ. 18. Невже вона вчителька? 19. Вона, мабуть, вчителька. 20. Вона, мабуть, сказала вам про це. 21. Невже вона сказала вам про це? 22. Не може бути, щоб вона сказала вам про це. 23. Вона, напевно, вже сказала вам про це. 24. Його, мабуть, також запросили. 25. Його,

напевно, також запросили. 26. Його, напевно, не запросили. 27. Невже його також запросили? 28. Невже його не запросили? 29. Ольга така бліда. Очевидно, вона хвора. 30. Можливо, вона хвора. Вона ніколи не пропускає уроки. 31. Невже вона хвора? Я бачила її вчора. 32. Не може бути, щоб він не зрозумів мене. 33. Можливо, він неправильно зрозумів вас. 34. Він, напевно, неправильно зрозумів вас. 35. Невже він дістав цю книгу? 36. Невже він не дістав цю книгу? 37. Він, мабуть, уже дістав цю книгу. 38. Він, очевидно, не дістав цю книгу. 39. Не може бути, щоб він не дістав цю книгу. 40. Не може бути, щоб вони вас не помітили. 41. Невже вони не помітили нас? 42. Вони, мабуть, не помітили нас. 43. Вони, напевно, не помітили нас. 44. Вони, напевно, помітили нас. 45. Вони могли помітити нас. 46. Не може бути, щоб вони ще не прийшли. 47. Невже вони ще не прийшли? 48. Вони, напевно, вже прийшли. 49. Вони, напевно, ще не прийшли. 50. Вони, мабуть, уже прийшли. 51. Вони, мабуть, ще не прийшли. 52. Можливо, вони ще прийдуть. 53. Він, мабуть, не подзвонив вам. 54. Він, напевно, не подзвонив вам. 55. Невже він не подзвонив вам? 56. Не може бути, щоб він не подзвонив вам. 57. Ви, мабуть, помиляєтесь. 58. Ви, очевидно, помиляєтесь. 59. Невже ви помиляєтесь? 60. Не міг він помилитися.

**4. Translate into English. Express prohibition using the modal verbs *can't*, *may not*, *mustn't*.**

1. Тут не можна переходити вулицю. 2. Вам не можна купатися в морі. 3. Йому не можна вставати з ліжка. 4. Не смій брати цю книгу. 5. Дітям не можна гратися з гострими предметами. 6. Вчителю не можна бути запальним. 7. Дітям не можна гратися з вогнем. 8. Не смій говорити з дорослими таким тоном. 9. Не смій купувати цю книгу. Тобі рано читати такі книги. 10. Не смій гуляти допізна. Ти мусиш бути вдома о десятій. 11. Тут не можна курити. 12. Тобі не можна сидіти на сонці тривалий час. 13. Експонати не можна чіпати руками. 14. Тут не можна стояти. Пройдіть, будь ласка, он туди. 15. Не смій купатися. Сьогодні холодно. 16. Тут заборонено паркувати машини. 17. Не смій відчиняти вікно. Холодно. 18. Не смій виходити без пальта. Температура нижче нуля. 19. Не смій їх турбувати, нехай вони посплять трохи. 20. Не потрібно розмовляти так голосно, дитина ще спить. 21. Не можна запізнюватися на заняття. 22. Не смій говорити йому про це. Він не повинен нічого знати. 23. Не потрібно говорити українською мовою на уроках англійської. 24. Не смій так жартувати з мамою. 25. Не можна так хвилюватися. 26. Не можна так поспішати. 27. Згідно з правилами гравець не повинен торкатися м'яча руками. 28. Не смій говорити про такі речі при дітях. 29. Лікар не повинен говорити пацієнту такі речі. 30. Тобі не можна виходити. У тебе висока температура. 31. Вам не можна так багато працювати. Ви можете захворіти. 32. Ви не повинні припиняти роботу,

доки не закінчите її. 33. Не можна приймати ліки без дозволу лікаря. 34. Вам не можна підіймати такі важкі речі. 35. Йому не можна вживати алкоголь. 36. Вам не можна пересідати під час уроку. 37. Ви не повинні мовчати. 38. Словником користуватися не дозволяється. 39. Не смій давати такі поради. 40. Не смій телефонувати йому. Він повинен зателефонувати першим. 41. Не можна замовчувати такі питання. 42. Не смій сідати за кермо. Ти не вмієш водити машину. 43. Постояльцям не дозволяється брати ключі з собою. 44. Вам не можна їсти так багато хліба. 45. Сюди не можна заходити. 46. Не можна втрачати такий шанс. 47. Дітям не можна дивитися такі фільми. 48. Чужі речі брати не можна.

**5. Translate into English. Express obligation using the modal verbs *must, to have to, to be to*.**

1. Ви повинні показати нам, як це робиться. 2. Усі повинні працювати. 3. Ми були змушені повернутися назад. 4. Це потрібно зробити до суботи. 5. Вам доведеться прийти ще раз. 6. Мені потрібно зробити деякі покупки. 7. Вам доведеться написати йому і попередити про ваш приїзд. 8. Нам не довелося довго чекати. 9. Як довго вам довелося чекати? 10. Де ми повинні були зустрітися? 11. Мені доведеться переписати цей текст. 12. Вони повинні були прийти о п'ятій. Уже шоста година, а їх все ще немає. 13. Я повинен був відвезти їх на залізничний вокзал, але моя машина вийшла з ладу і їм довелося йти пішки. 14. Я був змушений залишити все і поїхати в лікарню. 15. Він повинен був приїхати вечірнім поїздом, ми так домовилися. 16. Тобі обов'язково потрібно їхати? 17. Погода була дощова, нам довелося відкласти наш пікнік. 18. Коли він повинен приїхати? 19. Я мушу закінчити цю роботу сьогодні. 20. Я повинна була закінчити цю роботу ще в суботу. 21. Коли ми повинні повернути цю книгу? 22. Ми повинні були йти туди разом з мамою, але мама захворіла, і мені довелося йти туди самому. 23. Ми домовилися, що я повинна була зайти за нею і привести її сюди. 24. Нам доведеться перезимувати тут. 25. Мені доводиться багато працювати зараз. 26. Я повинна була прийти о другій, але я запізнилася. 27. Вам доведеться поговорити з ним особисто. 28. Вам доводиться вставати дуже рано, чи не так? 29. Документи повинні бути готові до середи. 30. Матеріали повинні були бути готовими до середи. 31. Нам доведеться підготувати все до середи. 32. Ми були змушені підготувати все до середи. 33. Запитай лікаря, що потрібно робити, щоб позбутися цього кашлю. 34. Чи мушу я бути присутнім на цих зборах? 35. Текст був досить складним, мені довелося користуватися словником. 36. Моя сестра захворіла і я була змушена залишитися вдома. 37. Я не можу піти з вами, я мушу дочекатися брата. 38. Що тобі доводиться робити тут? 39. Ми промокли до рубця і нам довелося переодягнутися. 40. Нам довелося перечекати дощ на станції. 41. Нам довелося

пересісти на тролейбус, оскільки автобус не йшов у тому напрямку. 42. Я відчуваю, що я мушу щось зробити, але що?

**6. Translate into English. Express obligation using the modal verbs *must, to have to, to be to, shall, should*.**

1. Мені доручили зробити доповідь і мені довелося проглянути велику кількість джерел. 2. Я не повинен був говорити з нею таким тоном. 3. О котрій годині ви повинні були зустрітися? 4. Мені доведеться провести вихідні вдома. Я погано себе почуваю. Лікар говорить, що мені не можна виходити. 5. Вам слід було прийти раніше. 6. Як постелешся, так і виспишся. 7. Це повинно було статися. 8. Ти мусиш кинути палити. 9. Діти повинні слухатися своїх батьків. 10. Мені продовжувати? 11. Вам слід було сказати йому правду. 12. Звідки мені знати, де він? 13. Ви мусите вибачитися. 14. Вам слід було вибачитися. 15. Мені довелося вибачитися. 16. Ви мусите це зробити негайно. 17. Вам доведеться піти туди ще раз. 18. Я думаю, вам слід сказати декілька слів про ваші плани на майбутнє. 19. Всі повинні знати це. 20. Всім приходити? 21. Нам доводиться багато читати, адже ми навчаємося на філологічному факультеті. 22. Ми повинні були закінчити переклад ще вчора. 23. Коли йому приходити? 24. Вам слід більше працювати у фонолабораторії. 25. Необхідно добре подумати, перш ніж відповідати. 26. Це все, що ви повинні були мені сказати? 27. Я хворів, пропустив багато уроків, і зараз мені доводиться багато працювати. 28. Якби він зробив все вчасно, йому не потрібно було б іти туди зараз. 29. Нам слід було прийняти їхню пропозицію. 30. Я думаю, вам слід попередити ваших батьків про ваш від'їзд. 31. Я повинен знати, де ти буваєш. 32. Шкода, що ви мусите йти. 33. “Коли вони повернуться?” – “Звідки мені знати?” 34. Мені не довелося чекати його, він повернувся вчасно. 35. Ви мусите вивчити цей вірш напам'ять. 36. “Чи мушу я зустріти його?” – “Я думаю, немає потреби. Він добре знає дорогу сюди.” 37. Я повинна була відправити цей лист ще вчора. 38. Вам не слід було відпускати дітей самих. 39. Хто повинен іти за покупками сьогодні? 40. Я подумав, що ти мусиш знати це. 41. Вам не слід було сюди приходити. 42. Ви повинні зробити це для нього. Ми мусимо допомагати один одному. 43. Вам не треба було так поспішати.

**7. Translate into English using modal verbs.**

1. Невже це ваша донька? Вона так виросла. 2. Ви не могли не бачити їх там. Вони повинні були бути на тій вечірці. 3. Не міг він запізнитися. 4. Невже він запізнився? 5. Він, мабуть, запізнився. 6. Хіба міг хто-небудь подумати, що ця команда займе перше місце? 7. Невже вони програли? 8. Не може бути, щоб вони

програли. 9. Ви могли виграти. 10. Ви могли б виграти. 11. Невже ви не могли виграти? 12. Дарма він пішов до бібліотеки. 13. Дарма ви запитали його про це. Ви могли запитати мене про це. 14. “Всім залишатися?” – “Ні, ви можете йти додому.” 15. Дарма ти сердишся на Ніну. Вона зовсім невинна. 16. Ви можете не говорити йому нічого. Він уже все знає. 17. Невже він нічого не знає до цих пір? 18. Де поставити цю вазу? 19. Дарма ми вийшли так рано. Ми могли побути вдома ще хвилин двадцять. 20. Я бачу, що мені немає потреби закінчувати свою думку. 21. Я ніяк не можу зрозуміти, на що він натякає. 22. Не міг він забути про це. Він дуже відповідальна людина. 23. Ви могли б переконати його, якби ви спробували. 24. Я повинен був повернути цю книгу ще два дні тому. Я не можу її більше тримати, я мушу віддати її сьогодні. 25. Він, напевно, займається спортом. 26. Не треба звертати увагу на його слова. 27. Ви, мабуть, всі читали цей роман. Отже, ми можемо обговорити його сьогодні. 28. Невже ви ще не бачили цей фільм? 29. Не могли б ви дати мені цей журнал до понеділка? 30. Він прийде, побачиш. 31. Я закінчу цей переклад вчасно, хоча мені доведеться не спати всю ніч. 32. Дарма ви доводите, що ви праві. Його ніколи не можна переконати. 33. Я ніяк не міг заснути. 34. З якої вправи починати? 35. Мені довелося піти до бібліотеки вчора. Я повинна була взяти там книгу. Але дарма я ходила туди. Книгу вже взяли. 36. Мені доведеться залишитися після уроків. Ми повинні обговорити план роботи гуртка. 37. Невже ви дійсно зробите це для мене? 38. Я буду повторювати це знову і знову: дарма ти одружився так рано. 39. Ми повинні зустрітися завтра ввечері. 40. Дарма ти хвилюєшся. Він міг проспати. 41. Не міг він не знати про ваш приїзд. 42. Невже він не прийшов? 43. Я не застав його вдома, мені довелося поговорити з його батьками. 44. Вікно не відкривалося. Я була змушена попросити сусідів допомогти мені. 45. Ми могли б бути друзями. 46. Немає потреби включати це питання в порядок денний. 47. Земля сира. Тут, напевно, йшов дощ недавно. 48. Перечитай свій твір ще раз. Можливо, ти допустила помилку. 49. Не могла вона зробити таку помилку. Вона досить добре знає граматику. 50. Вони, напевно, так і не зустрілися. 51. Невже вони так і не зустрілися? 52. Ти міг би нам сказати, що тут відбувається. 53. “Мені зараз піти туди?” – “Ні, немає потреби. Ти можеш піти туди завтра.” 54. Ви повинні відвідати свого брата. Вам слід було це зробити ще на минулому тижні. 55. Невже це ваш онук? Я не можу повірити своїм очам. 56. Тато сказав, що машина не хотіла заводитися, і йому довелося йти пішки. 57. “Тобі слід було подзвонити ще раз.” – “Я знаю, але я не міг зважитися.” 58. Невже вона вийшла за нього заміж? 59. Невже вони так і не одружилися? 60. Мені довелося вибачитися. 61. Уже дуже пізно. Дітям слід бути у ліжку. 62. Немає потреби вчити цей вірш напам’ять. 63. “Мені взяти

парасольку?” – “Так, небо сіре, може бути дощ.” 64. Невже ви не знаєте один одного? 65. Можливо, вона вже спить. 66. Вона ніколи не розповідала про своє дитинство. Очевидно, була якась причина. 67. Невже ти сам це написав? 68. Де мої окуляри? Я не можу їх знайти. Я, мабуть, забула їх вдома. 69. Він, очевидно, не зумів переконати вас. 70. Тут дозволяється палити? 71. Я, напевно, буду зайнятий завтра і не зможу зустрітися з вами. 72. Дітей не можна залишати без нагляду. 73. Можливо, після обіду піде дощ. 74. І де я міг його бачити? 75. Не може бути, щоб ви загубили свій ключ. Ви могли покласти його в сумочку. 76. Можна почекати вас тут? 77. Я не могла не погодитися з ним. 78. Я просто не могла не думати про цю подорож. 79. Невже ви ніколи не чули це прізвище? 80. Дарма ви передрукували цю сторінку.

## LESSON 23

### MOOD

**Mood** is a grammatical category of the verb which indicates the attitude of the speaker or writer to the action expressed by the verb from the point of view of its reality.

There are the following moods in English:

- a) **the direct moods** (the Indicative and the Imperative);
- b) **the oblique moods** (Subjunctive I, Subjunctive II, the Suppositional and the Conditional).

### THE DIRECT MOODS

#### THE INDICATIVE MOOD

The Indicative Mood shows that the action or state expressed by the verb is presented as a fact.

*We **went** home early in the evening.*

*You **study** at the University.*

*We **have been having** an English lesson for 40 minutes.*

The verb in the indicative mood has three primary tenses (present, past, future), two correlation forms (perfect and non-perfect), two aspect forms (common and continuous), two voice forms (active and passive).

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

The Imperative Mood expresses a command or a request. In modern English it has only one form which coincides with the infinitive without the particle *to*; it is used in the second person (singular and plural).

*Go and fetch him.*

*Please put the papers on the table.*

In forming the negative the auxiliary verb *to do* is always used, even with the verb *to be*.

*Hush! Don't make much noise!*

*Don't go home alone!*

*Don't be angry!*

The auxiliary verb *to do* may also be used in affirmative sentences to make the request more emphatic.

*But now, do sing again to us.*

In commands and requests addressed to the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person or persons the analytical form *let ... + Infinitive* is used. When the person addressed is denoted by a personal pronoun, it is used in the objective case.

*Let us go together.*

*Let him finish his dinner first.*

In negative sentences the analytical forms take the particle *not* without an auxiliary.

*Let her not go home alone.*

*Let us not argue the matters.*

The imperative mood is used only in imperative sentences and can't be used in questions.

## THE OBLIQUE MOODS

The function of **the oblique moods** is to represent something in the speaker's mind not as a real fact, but as a wish, purpose, supposition, doubt or condition problematic or contrary to fact. There are four oblique moods in Modern English, of which two are synthetical and two analytical.

The synthetical moods are **Subjunctive I** and **Subjunctive II**.

The analytical moods are the **Conditional** and **Suppositional**.

### SUBJUNCTIVE I

**Subjunctive I** represents an action as problematic, but not as contradicting reality. It is used to express order, request, suggestion, supposition, purpose etc.

*I suggest that he do the work.*

*Long live the forces of peace!*

**Subjunctive I** has no tenses; the same form is used for the present, past and future.

*He orders that we **be** present.*

*He ordered that we **be** present.*

*It is necessary that you **be** present to-morrow.*

In **Subjunctive I** the verb *to be* has the form *be* for all the persons singular and plural, which differs from the corresponding forms in the Indicative Mood (the Present Indefinite). In all other verbs the forms of Subjunctive I differ from the corresponding forms in the Indicative Mood (the Present Indefinite) only in 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular, which in Subjunctive I has no ending –s.

*Far **be** it from me to contradict you.*

*God forbid!*

## SUBJUNCTIVE II

**Subjunctive II** represents an action as contrary to reality.

*I wish he **were** with us (but he is not with us).*

*If he **had been** in town yesterday, he would have come (he was not in town yesterday).*

**Subjunctive II** has two tenses: **the present** and **the past**.

The forms of the Present Subjunctive II are homonymous with the forms of the Past Indefinite Indicative:

**the Present Subjunctive II**                    *I spoke, I wrote, etc.*

**the Past Indefinite Indicative**        *I spoke, I wrote, etc.*

The forms of the Past Subjunctive II are homonymous with the Past Perfect Indicative:

**the Past Subjunctive II**                    *I had heard, I had been, etc.*

**the Past Perfect Indicative**        *I had heard, I had been, etc.*

## THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

**The Suppositional Mood** represents an action as problematic, but not contradicting reality. It is used to express necessity, order, suggestion, and supposition.

**The Suppositional Mood** is formed by combining the auxiliary verb *should* (for all persons) with the Infinitive. It has two tenses: **the present** and **the past**.

**The Present Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb *should* + *Indefinite (Continuous) Infinitive*:

*I suggested that he **should meet** her.*

**The Past Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb *should* + *Perfect (Perfect Continuous) Infinitive*:

*She was frightened lest she **should have been doing** something wrong.*

## THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

**The Conditional Mood** expresses the unreal action. The unreality of this action is due to the absence of the necessary circumstances on which the realization of the action depends. It is mainly used in the principal clause of a complex sentence with a subordinate clause of unreal condition, where the verb is in *Subjunctive II*.

*If he were here he **would help** us.*

*If he had not been so busy yesterday, he **would have come**.*

The Conditional Mood has two tenses: **the present** and **the past**.

**The Present Conditional** is formed by the auxiliary verbs *should / would + Indefinite (Continuous) Infinitive*.

*If they came for her, she **wouldn't go**.*

**The Past Conditional** is formed by the auxiliary verbs *should / would + Perfect (Perfect Continuous) Infinitive*.

*Unless I had heard the story from his lips, I **should never have believed** he was capable of such an action.*

## THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN SIMPLE SENTENCES

In simple sentences Subjunctive I is used to express:

### 1. Wish.

*Long **live** freedom!*

*God **save** the king!*

*Success **attend** you!*

To express wish the Subjunctive I with the mood auxiliary *may* is also used.

***May** success **attend** you!*

***May** all your dreams **come** true!*

***May** you **live** long!*

### 2. In oaths and implications.

*Manners **be** **hanged**!*

***Confound** these flies!*

### 3. In some set expressions.

***Be** it so!*

*God **forbid**!*

*Far **be** it from me to spoil the fun / to conceal the truth / argue with you...*

### 4. Strong advice (*had better + Infinitive*).

*You **had better go** there again.*

*You had better wait here.*

**5. Preference** (*would rather + Infinitive*).

*would rather + Indefinite Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the present.

*would rather + Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the past.

*I would rather go there again.*

*I would rather have gone there long ago.*

In simple sentences Subjunctive II is used to express:

1. **An unreal wish** (the Presents Subjunctive II) or **regret** that something happened or did not happen in the past (the Past Subjunctive II) in exclamatory sentences beginning with *if only*.

*If only it were true!*

*If only I knew what to do!*

*If only I had listened to my parents!*

## EXERCISES

### 1. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. He had better take the metro. 2. I think I had better go to bed. 3. They had better try their luck another time. 4. We had better start at once. 5. You had better take a couple of aspirins and try to sleep. 6. She had better see a doctor about it. 7. You had better not tell her about it. 8. He had better wait here. 9. Somebody had better go to the library for the dictionaries.

### 2. Translate into English.

1. Краще б вам працювати разом. 2. Ви б краще доглядали хворого сина. 3. Вам би краще відвідати картинну галерею. 4. Ви б краще подивилися це слово в словнику. 5. Краще б ви нічого не планувати заздалегідь. 6. Їй краще не втручатися в цю брудну справу. 7. В мого брата страшенно болить голова. Краще йому не йти до школи сьогодні. 8. Ви б краще прослухали цей текст в фонолабораторії. 9. Вона сказала, що йде дощ. Краще б нам сидіти вдома. 10. Вона сказала, що завтра буде гарна погода. То нам би краще поїхати за місто. 11. Ви б краще купили новий автомобіль. 12. Ви б краще швидше упаковали ці речі. 13. Їй би краще прийняти рішення вчитися у медичному університеті. 14. Погода дуже погана. Йому б краще здати квитки до каси. 15. Вона б краще допомогла Тому розв'язати цю задачу. 16. Ви б краще переслали мені рукописи якнайшвидше. 17. Вона б краще зосередилася на своїй роботі. 18. Ви б краще прибрали свою кімнату. 19. Йому б краще поїхати до

Криму у відпустку. 20. Їй би краще їхати вечірнім потягом.

### **3. Advise your friend:**

1. to get this book from the library; 2. to look after his/her sick cousin; 3. to visit some historic places in that town; 4. to rest an hour or so before doing this job; 5. (not) to look for this book in the bookcase; 6. to look about before crossing the street; 7. not to make the plans for the summer so early; 8. to make friends with that boy; 9. to buy this book; 10. not to interfere in these affairs.

### **4. a) Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. I'm sure they'd much rather have some sandwiches to eat on the way. 2. She's not at all musical. She'd much rather see a good film. 3. She hates to be in people's way. She'd much rather stay at a hotel. 4. Would you rather stay at home tonight? 5. The weather is so fine. I'd rather walk at least part of the way. 6. I'd rather not have any lunch today. 7. Which would you rather take?

### **b) Paraphrase the sentences using *I would rather/sooner do smth.***

1. You prefer not to put off this job but to do it right away. 2. You choose not to get this book from the library but to buy it. 3. You prefer not to go on an excursion to London but to have your holiday in the countryside. 4. You choose not to stay at home but to go to a holiday camp. 5. You prefer, not to go to the sea but to have a walking holiday. 6. You prefer not to have a cup of coffee but some milk. 7. You choose not to write a letter to your friend but to phone him. 8. You prefer not to go to the cinema but to watch this film on TV. 9. You choose not to go to your friend's place but to invite him/her to your place.

### **c) Translate into English.**

1. Я вважав би за краще не відкладати цієї роботи. 2. Краще я куплю цю книгу. 3. Я б віддав перевагу подорожі до Лондона. 4. Я б не хотів залишитися там ні на один день. 5. Я краще займусь спортом. 6. Краще я вип'ю чашечку кави. 7. Я вважав би за краще прочитати цю книгу в оригіналі. 8. Я б хотів провести відпустку інакше. 9. Я б віддала перевагу туризму, бо він значно дешевший. 10. Я вважав би за краще врахувати дані цих досліджень у нашій подальшій роботі. 11. Їй би було краще відпочити від екскурсій. 12. Він вважав би за краще проводити свої досліди у лабораторії. 13. Вона вважала би за краще, щоб погода не змінювалася на гіршу. 14. Я вважав би за краще зустрітися після 5 години (5 p.m.). 15. Вони вважали б за краще припинити це обговорення. 16. Чи не вважали б ви за краще поставити усі крапки над «і»? 17. Вона б віддала перевагу провести усе літо на півдні. 18. Я б вважав за краще не писати реферат на цю тему. 19. Джоні вважав за краще їхати у відрадження завтра. 20. Вона вважала за краще не пропускати лекцію про Шекспіра.

### **5. a) Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. If only your mother could see you now. 2. If only he gave me a job. 3. Oh, if I had this chance. 4. If only someone had warned me. 5. If only it did not rain. 6. Oh, if you had never gone there. 7. If only I were young again. 8. If only we found a taxi. 9. Oh, if she had taken my advice. 10. If only you realized how important it is. 11. If only I could help you. 12. Oh, if she might get there in time.

### **b) Express your wish:**

1. Your friend did not get the telegram and did not meet you. You wish she had got your telegram.

2. You don't know Italian and can't act as an interpreter. You wish to know this language.

3. Your friend did not let you know about her arrival and you did not see her. You wish she had let you know about it.

4. It is autumn now. You wish it to be spring now.

5. Your friend did not warn you about the danger and you got into trouble. You wish she had warned you about it.

6. You did not know about the meeting and did not attend it. You wish you had known about it.

7. Your summer holidays are over. You wish to have them now.

### **c) Translate into English.**

1. Ох, якби він отримав мою телеграму. 2. Ох, хоч би він погодився почекати ще тиждень. 3. Ох, хоч би погода не зіпсувалася. 4. Ех, якби ж він повідомив нас про свій план. 5. Ех, якби ж ми замовили квитки заздалегідь. 6. Якби ж не було так спекотно. 7. Якби ж він не був таким сором'язливим. 8. Якби ж ви тільки подзвонили до мене. 9. Якби ж він написав мені про свою хворобу. 10. Якби ж ви переконали його прийти сюди. 11. Ех, якби ж я знав, що ви з дружиною приїдете цим літом в Англію. 12. Якби ж ви тільки потоваришували з ними. Це чудова сім'я. 13. У вас такий поганий вигляд. Якби ви не ходили на збори сьогодні. 14. Ох, якби ти не приймав поспішних рішень. 15. Якби вона не робила так багато помилок. 16. Ох, якби вчителька пояснила нам ці важкі правила ще раз. 17. Ох, якби спорудження цього будинку було завершено до кінця місяця. 18. Ох, якби ми могли тільки брати участь у змаганнях. 19. Ох, якби він дістав квитки на футбольний матч вчора. 20. Хоч би він розумів такі прості речі. 21. Ох, якби всі прочитали цю книгу перед семінаром. 22. Ох, якби він надав хлопцю ще один шанс. 23. Ох, якби ви самі прийняли рішення з цього важливого питання. 24. Ох, якби ви були тут о восьмій. 25. Ох, якби ми пішли вчора до театру.

## LESSON 24

# THE USE OF CONDITIONAL MOOD IN SIMPLE SENTENCE

**The Conditional Mood** expresses the unreal action. The unreal condition in simple sentences is expressed in the following way:

1. smb. + should / would + Infinitive

*I should not say so.*

*I should not have said so yesterday.*

*should / would + Indefinite Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the present.

*should / would + Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the past.

2. but for this smb. / smth. + should / would + Infinitive

*But for the wind the weather would be nice.*

*But for your help the old women would not have risked crossing the street.*

*should / would + Indefinite Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the present.

*should / would + Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the past.

3. otherwise / or smb. + should / would + Infinitive

*I shall take my younger sister to the pictures. Otherwise I should gladly stay and help you.*

*It was much too late. Or I should not have objected.*

*should / would + Indefinite Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the present.

*should / would + Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action which refers to the past.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. I should so like to meet her. 2. Thank you, I should love to come. 3. He would be sorry to meet you. 4. What would you do in my place? 5. They would simply jump at the opportunity. 6. I saw her last week-end. She is looking so well. Has put on some weight. You would never have recognized her. 7. But for this incident it would have been a pleasant evening. 8. But for my new shoes which hurt my feet terribly I should have quite enjoyed myself. 9. But for her tired eyes you would never give her age. 10. But for me you would be still standing there. 11. But for you I should be safe at home now. 12. She never intended to go, otherwise she would have packed her things. 13. She's really fond of children, otherwise she would not be popular with them. 14. He memorized his speech, otherwise he would not have spoken so well. 15. I use only the freshest butter, or my

cakes would not be so good. 16. She must have heard of it, otherwise she would not have been so glum. 17. Probably they are out, or somebody would answer the phone.

## **2. Complete the following sentences.**

1. You were going to visit your friends but could not do it because your mother was ill. But for your mother's illness ...
2. You promised your friend to come to her birthday party but did not come because your mother was leaving. But for your mother's departure ...
3. You'd like to go to the forest. But it is cold. But for the cold ...
4. Your friend asked you to meet her at the station but you did not meet her because you were having lessons. But for the lessons...
5. Your friend invites you to a party. But for the exam ...
6. You are going to the country tomorrow after classes. But you have got a telegram announcing your mother's arrival and can't go. But for your mother's arrival...

## **3. Translate into English.**

1. Якби не дощ, ми б могли поїхати на суботу та неділю за місто.
2. Якби не спека, було б приємно пройтись додому пішки.
3. Якби не її хвороба, вона б легко впоралась з домашнім завданням.
4. Якби не твоя неуважність, ти б не забув про збори.
5. Якби не її хвороба, вона була б хорошою студенткою.
6. Якби не погана погода, я б показав Вам багато історичних пам'яток у нашому місті.
7. Я просто вивчив текст напам'ять, а то б усе переплутав.
8. Я б не сказала, що це легка справа.
9. Він ще не знає про конференцію, а то б він уже був тут.
10. Мабуть, поїзд запізнився, а то б вони вже приїхали.
11. Було б дуже добре закінчити все сьогодні.
12. Вона ще зовсім недосвідчена, а то вона б так не робила.
13. Минулої неділі цілий день йшов дощ, інакше б ми поїхали за місто.
14. Я волів би не втручатися.
15. Якби не головний біль, я б приєднався до вас.
16. Вона й не збиралася їхати, а то б уже давно спакувала свої речі.
17. То Ви бачили виставу без Образцової? Вона б Вам значно більше сподобалась.
18. Чому ж ти не пішов туди на другий день? Вони б дуже зраділи.
19. Якби не дощ, ми б гарно провели час за містом.
20. Якби не мої заняття, я б зайшов до вас ввечері.
21. Якби не день народження мого друга, я б пішов з тобою до театру.
22. Якби не твоя допомога, я б не написав дипломну роботу.
23. Якби не моє погане здоров'я, я б поїхав з друзями у гори.
24. Якби не наші іспити, ми б поїхали за місто на вихідні.
25. Якби не твої помилки в контрольній роботі, ти б здала іспит.
26. Якби не твоя відпустка, ти б поїхав у відрядження до Лондона.
27. Якби не дощі під час нашої відпустки, ми б дуже гарно засмагли.
28. Якби не твоя ледачість, ти б вчилася на «відмінно».
29. Якби не тест з англійської у понеділок, то

ми всі були б щасливі. 30. Якби не ти, я б не купив корейський автомобіль. 31. Якби не залік з екології, я взагалі не ходив би на ці лекції. 32. Якби не ти, я не був би таким агресивним. 33. Якби не мої батьки, мені б довелося витратити зароблені гроші на їжу. 34. Якби не твоя хвороба, тобі б не довелося залишатися в ліжку в такий чудовий день. 35. Я дуже зайнятий зараз, інакше я б відвідав вас сьогодні. 36. Я мушу йти до лікаря, інакше я допомогла б тобі з перекладом. 37. Вона не працює у цій фірмі, інакше б вона одержувала гарну зарплатню. 38. У мене немає зараз грошей, інакше я б купив цю чудову книгу. 39. Вона не вчилася на «відмінно», інакше вона закінчила б школу з золотою медаллю. 40. Яка жахлива погода, а то б ми поїхали до Смітів. 41. Зараз йде дощ, а то б ми з'їздили до лісу по гриби. 42. У нас сьогодні збори, а то б ми зустрілися. 43. Містер Волтон не любить подорожувати, інакше він би об'їздив увесь світ. 44. Джейн не могла зробити цю роботу, інакше вона б не попросила допомогти їй. 45. У мене немає DVD програвача, інакше я б дивився фільми з ранку до вечора.

## LESSON 25

### THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE II IN COMPLEX SENTENCES (I)

1. The Subjunctive II is used in **object clauses** when the predicate of the principal clause is expressed by the verb *to wish*. If the action expressed in the object clause is *simultaneous* with that of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive II (*were, worked, spent, etc*) is used.

*I wish my friend **were** here.*

*I wish I **had** a dog.*

*I wish she **felt** as I do.*

If the action expressed in the object clause is *prior* to that of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive II (*had been, had worked, had spent, etc*) is used.

*I wish I **had gone** there.*

*I wish I **had not done** it.*

The above examples show that such sentences are translated into Ukrainian by means *шкода, добре б було*.

The analytical form with mood auxiliary *would* (for all persons) is also used in the object clause after the verb *to wish*. This form is used only in sentences referring to the present or future; it is possible only if the subject of the principal clause is not the same

as the subject of the object clause. It is chiefly used in sentences expressing request or annoyance.

*I wish you **would stay** with me for a while.*

With the verb **to be** this form is hardly ever used.

2. The Subjunctive II is used in **object clauses** when the predicate of the principal clause is expressed by the phrase *I would rather*. If the action expressed in the object clause is *simultaneous* with that of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive II (*were, worked, spent, etc*) is used.

*I would rather you **didn't help** me, actually.*

*I would rather somebody **knew** about it.*

If the action expressed in the object clause is *prior* to that of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive II (*had been, had worked, had spent, etc*) is used.

*I would rather she **hadn't come** yesterday.*

3. The Subjunctive II is used in **subject clauses** modifying the noun *time* in the principal clause. In this case the Present Subjunctive II (*were, had, made, went, etc.*) is used.

*It is time they **were** home.*

*It is time we **went** home.*

*It is high time we **had** tea.*

## EXERCISES

### 1. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. Ten to six. It's time he were here. 2. It's about time you started packing. 3. It's high time she knew all about it. 4. Isn't it time you went to bed, young man? 5. I think it is about time we took some preventive measures. 6. It's high time they were told about it. 7. It was high time they phoned. 8. Don't you think it's time you got the cake out. I can smell it burning.

### 2. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.

1. It is high time the students (to know) this story well. 2. It's high time you (to bring) the book. 3. It's high time they (to translate) this article. 4. It's high time she (to ring up) me. 5. It's high time they (to make) all necessary arrangements. 6. It's high time he (to behave) better. 7. It's high time she (to be serious).

### 3. Translate into English.

1. Час би вже братися до роботи серйозно. До екзаменів залишився тільки

місяць. 2. Вже час їй подзвонити мені. Вона обіцяла повідомити мене про результати екзамену. 3. Час вже йому поводитися пристойно. Він - дорослий. 4. Час би йому вже бути серйознішим, він уже не дитина. 5. Час уже їм закінчувати роботу. Вони працюють уже 6 годин. 6. Час би їм взятися до уроків. Уже шоста година, а вони нічого не зробили. 7. Вам би вже час і допомогти їй. Вона вже довго працює і, мабуть, стомилася. 8. Вам вже час переконати її відмовитись від цієї подорожі. Вона не буде корисною для неї. 9. Час вже вам вирішити, як ви проведете свою відпустку. Час минає, а ще нічого не зроблено. 10. Всім було вже час лягати спати, бо було пізно. Але вони були зайняті роботою. 11. Мабуть, вже час мені і листа його одержати. 12. Вам вже давно час оглянути історичні пам'ятники нашого міста. 13. Час Вам потоваришувати з ним. Він - хороший хлопчина. 14. Час би щось перекусити. Я нічого не їв з самого ранку. 15. Мені здається, що Вам уже час провідати свого товариша. Ви ж із ним не бачилися вже три роки. 16. Час би Вам уже й знати правила. 17. Час би Вам розказати їй усю правду. 18. Час вам припинити ці суперечки. Все одно ніхто з вас не поступиться і ви ніколи не досягнете згоди. 19. Вже час Вам закінчити переклад цієї статті. Ви перекладаєте її вже два дні. 20. Джону час лягати спати. 21. Вже час вам придбати новий автомобіль. 22. Йому час зустрітися з Джоном. 23. Вже давно час вам закінчити свою дисертацію. 24. Час вже повертатися додому, бо вже дуже пізно. 25. Вже давно час Вам зрозуміти це правило. 26. Вже час у вашому віці знати такі прості речі. 27. Вам вже час зустрітися з професором і обговорити свою подальшу роботу над дисертацією. 28. Їй вже давно час прийняти якесь рішення. 29. Нам час трохи перепочити, перш ніж розпочинати роботу. 30. Вам час вже сходити до театру. Ви не були у театрі з минулого року. 31. Вам вже давно час позбутися поганих звичок. 32. Студентам, які навчаються на комерційній основі, вже давно пора сплатити за навчання. 33. Вам давно час підстригтися. 34. Вам вже час повернути ці книги до бібліотеки. 35. Їй вже час бути уважною та досягти великих успіхів у роботі. 36. Їй вже давно час повернутися, а то я дуже хвилююся. 37. Вам час пофарбувати вікна, у кімнаті стане набагато світліше. 38. Вам вже давно час припинити працювати 12 годин на день. Ви виглядаєте дуже втомленим. 39. Час вам мати комп'ютер. Ви могли б надрукувати свою дипломну роботу самі. 40. Йому вже час готуватися до заліку, а він ще нічого не прочитав. 41. Їй вже час притримуватися діти, бо вона така повна. 42. Вам час займатися спортом, ви б були дуже здорові. 43. Вам вже час розповісти мені про свої проблеми, я б вам допоміг. 44. Вам вже час працювати систематично, ви б вже досягли великих успіхів. 45. Йому вже час приїхати до міста, він би взяв участь у обговоренні цієї книги. 46. Вам вже час показати професору свою роботу, а ви знову залишили свої

папери вдома. 47. Вам вже час піти на прогулянку, але погода знову зіпсувалася. 48. Вам вже час дістати квитки на концерт, ми б одержали задоволення від чудових пісень. 49. Давно вже час бути обережним. З вами завжди трапляється нещастя. 50. Вам давно вже час поговорити зі мною. Ох, якби ви прийшли до мене завтра!

#### **4. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. I wish it were summer. 2. I wish it did not rain to-morrow. 3. I wish it were not raining. 4. I wish you did not speak like this. 5. I wish we had something to do at least. 6. Don't you wish it were not late? 7. We wished he got off the bus. 8. I wish we knew it for sure. 9. I know nothing, I only wish I did. 10. You'll wish you were home again. 11. She wished she had taken the chance. 12. You will wish you had not interfered. 13. How I wished I had left her alone! 14. We wished we had stayed at home. 15. Do you wish you had left the others? 16. I do wish I had not taken the dog. 17. I wish you had seen her face at that moment. 18. She'll wish she had taken the opportunity. 19. You'll wish you had taken better care of your teeth. 20. I wish the guests had not yet come.

#### **5. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate mood form.**

1. Our classroom doesn't have any windows; I wish our classroom ... windows. 2. The sun isn't shining. I wish the sun ... right now. 3. I didn't go shopping. I wish I ... shopping. 4. I didn't know how to dance. I wish I ... how to dance. 5. You didn't tell them about it. I wish you ... them about it. 6. It is cold today. I'm not wearing a coat. I wish I ... a coat. 7. I don't have enough money to buy that book. I wish I ... enough money. 8. Elena is tired because she went to bed late last night. She wishes she ... to bed earlier last night. 9. I can't go with you tomorrow, but I wish I ... . 10. My friend won't ever lend me his car. I wish he ... me his car for my date tomorrow night. 11. Mrs. Takasawa isn't coming to dinner with us tonight. I wish she ... to dinner with us. 12. The teacher is going to give an exam tomorrow. I wish he ... us an exam tomorrow. 13. You can't meet my parents. I wish you ... them. 14. Khalid didn't come to the meeting. I wish he ... to the meeting. 15. I am not lying on a beach in Hawaii. I wish I ... on a beach in Hawaii.

#### **6. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate mood form.**

1. I'm not at home, but I wish I ... . 2. I don't know her, but I wish I ... . 3. I can't sing well, but I wish I ... . 4. I didn't go, but I wish I ... . 5. He won't talk about it, but I wish he ... . 6. I didn't read that book, but I wish I ... . 7. I want to go, but I can't. I wish I ... . 8. I don't have a bicycle, but I wish I ... . 9. He didn't buy a ticket to the game, but he wishes he ... . 10. She can't speak English, but she wishes she ... . 11. It probably won't happen, but I wish it ... . 12. He isn't old enough to drive a car, but he wishes he

... . 13. They didn't go to the movie, but they wish they ... . 14. I don't have a driver's license, but I wish I ... . 15. I'm not living in an apartment, but I wish I ... .

### **7. Fill in the blanks using the corresponding mood form.**

1. I wish you ... this film (saw, had seen). I am sure you would have liked it. 2. I wish you... earlier (came, had come). We should have gone to the museum together. 3. I wish you ... (had, had had) time to read this article. Now you would be able to answer all the questions. 4. I wish she ... us about the day of her arrival (informed, had informed). We should have met at the station. 5. I wish all the students... regularly (work, worked). They would get better knowledge and their speech would be more fluent. 6. I wish you ... comrade N. (saw, had seen). He would have told you many interesting things. 7. I wish you ... a ticket for a plane (bought, had bought). We should go there together. 8. I wish you ... with me yesterday (spoke, had spoken), I should have told you some facts and you would not feel ill at ease now.

### **8. Discuss the questions.**

1. What is something you can't do, but you wish you could do? 2. What do you wish you were doing now? 3. What is something you don't have but wish you had? 4. What is something that didn't happen yesterday, but that you wish had happened? 5. What is something that has never happened in your life, but that you wish would happen? 6. What is something that happened in your life, but that you wish had not happened? 7. What is something that you have to do but wish you didn't have to do? 8. What is something that will not happen tomorrow, but that you wish would happen? 9. What is something you don't know but wish you knew? 10. What is something you were unable to do yesterday, but you wish you could have done?

### **9. Paraphrase the given sentences.**

1. It is a pity you haven't seen him. 2. It is a pity he was in low spirits that night. 3. It is a pity he puts on airs. 4. It was a pity that you did not go to the Caucasus with us. 5. It is a pity that you did not come to see us yesterday. 6. It is a pity that you did not buy that grey hat.

### **10. Express your wish.**

*Example: You regret you did not do it. - I wish I had done it.*

1. You regret that he is absent from the lessons. 2. You regret that he does not know it. 3. You regret that he has forgotten to tell you about it. 4. You regret that he did not do it yesterday. 5. You regret that they have quarrelled. 6. You regret that they are angry with you. 7. You regret that they are wasting time. 8. You regret that he did not follow your

advice. 9. You regret that you have not understood me. 10. You regret that you can't swim. 11. You regret that you don't understand me. 12. You regret that they support this idea. 13. You regret that they did not support this idea. 14. You regret that he has not kept this word. 15. You regret that he does not feel his guilt. 16. You regret that she did not think it over carefully. 17. You regret that your friends aren't coming this summer.

### **11. Translate into English.**

1. Добре було б, якби він зустрів нас на станції. 2. Добре було б, якби ми знайшли таксі. 3. Йому хотілося, щоб його вірші були надруковані. 4. Їм хотілося, щоб ніхто нічого не знав. 5. Шкода, що ви не бачите його обличчя. 6. Шкода, що вже так пізно. 7. Жаль, що Вас тут немає. 8. Шкода, що він не розуміє. 9. Ви пошкодуєте, що не бачили картину. 10. Як я шкодував, що не попередив Вас. 11. Ми пошкодували, що не поїхали вранішнім поїздом. 12. Вона пожалкувала, що не дала йому своєї адреси. 13. Я тільки жалкую, що погода не була кращою. 14. Ви пожалкуєте, що поїхали з ними. 15. Шкода, що його там не було. 16. Шкода, що я взяла з собою ці туфлі. 17. Він пожалкував, що не написав матері. 18. Він пошкодував, що не знає адреси її матері. 19. Дехто жалкував, що не лишився вдома. 20. Шкода, що сьогодні так холодно. 21. Дуже шкода, що Ваші друзі не подзвонили мені. 22. Жаль, що Ви не розбудили мене. 23. Добре було б, якби Ви подзвонили мені рано в неділю. 24. Шкода, що ви не поїхали з нами на свято. 25. Шкода, що ви відклали цю роботу на завтра. 26. Шкода, що Ви не можете дозволити собі купити цей словник. 27. Шкода, що аудиторія № 5 не зручна для лекцій. 28. Як жаль, що Ви були так необережні. 29. Шкода, що Ви не цікавитесь мистецтвом. 30. Я тепер шкодную, що не взяла з собою таблетки від головного болю.

### **12. Translate into English.**

1. Шкода, що ти не можеш зустріти Тома. 2. Шкода, що ви не бачили цієї чудової вистави. 3. Шкода, що ви не написали вчора свою доповідь. 4. Шкода, що Джон дуже малий, я б узяв його з собою подивитися футбольний матч. 5. Шкода, що моя сестра мешкає так далеко від мене. Я б відвідував її частіше. 6. Вона пошкодувала, що витратила багато часу даремно. 7. Студенти пошкодували, що у них змінився декан. 8. Ви пошкодуєте, що вашу доповідь ніхто не перевірів. 9. Вона весь час шкодувала, що її син така несерйозна людина. 10. Як я шкодную, що мій університет, де я працюю, розташований так далеко від центру міста. 11. Я так люблю морозиво. Шкода, що ви не подали його на десерт! 12. Я дуже шкодную, що ви не брали участі в диспуті. 13. Ви пошкодуєте, що не посилаєтесь на цього автора у своїй дисертації. 14. Шкода, що магазин зачиняється так рано. Я не встиг

купити фруктів на десерт. 15. Шкода, що в тебе мало грошей, ми б змогли купити цю гарну книжку. 16. Він жалкував, що не наполіг на своєму. 17. Як він жалкував, що йому не довіряють. 18. Шкода, що ти не провів мене до станції, я заблукав і спізнився на поїзд. 19. Шкода, що зараз не зима, ми б каталися на лижах зранку до вчора. 20. Шкода, що зараз так холодно, ми б скупалися у річці. 21. Вони пожалкували, що не домовилися про наступну зустріч. 22. Ви пожалкуєте, що не зустрілися зі своїми випускниками минулого року. 23. Шкода, що літо закінчується. 24. Як він шкодував, що не подумався до цього сам! 25. Шкода, що йде дощ. Ми могли б сходити по гриби. 26. Вона шкодувала, що не додзвонилася братові і він не зустрів її на станції. 27. Шкода, що ти не маєш доказів і тобі ніхто не повірить. 28. Вона шкодувала, що нічого не чула про збори. 29. Він жалкував, що його не проінформували про від'їзд до Лондона. 30. Шкода, що нам не по дорозі, інакше я б із задоволенням допоміг вам.

### **13. Translate into English.**

1. Шкода, що ти не слухаєш мене, ти б не робила таких помилок. 2. Шкода, що в неї не було часу, вона допомогла б вам з перекладом. 3. Шкода, що він не відповів на всі запитання екзаменатора, він отримав би гарну оцінку. 4. Вона весь час жалкувала, що не вийшла заміж за Джона. 5. Шкода, що наша армія не контрактна. Він міг би служити із задоволенням. 6. Шкода, що ти не хочеш мати з ним справу. Він надійна людина, на нього можна покластися. 7. Вона пожалкувала, що не працювала по шість годин на день, вона склала б свої іспити успішно. 8. Він дуже шкодує, що постійно просить гроші у матері. 9. Вона пошкодувала, що була ледачою і не вчилася на «відмінно». 10. Він пошкодував, що не цікавився політикою. 11. Вона дуже шкодувала, що витратила гроші на дрібниці під час своєї відпустки. 12. Він пожалкував, що не впорався з роботою. Він міг би стати головою фірми. 13. Вона шкодувала, що не закінчила школу з золотою медаллю. Вона могла б вступити до університету. 14. Вона шкодувала, що не пішла на лекцію. 15. Студенти пожалкували, що в них сьогодні багато занять. Вони б усією групою пішли до театру. 16. Мері шкодувала, що не любить футбол. Інакше вона ходила б з Томом на матчі. 17. Він шкодував, що хворий і йому довелося залишитися у ліжку в такий чудовий день. 18. Вона шкодує, що не працювала старанно і робить так багато помилок. 19. Вона пошкодувала, що не слухала аудіо записи. Вона б значно поліпшила свою вимову. 20. Пітер пожалкував, що не любить подорожувати, інакше він об'їздив би увесь світ. 21. Вона пожалкувала, що була зайнята і не пограла в теніс. 22. Моя сестра пожалкувала, що витратила багато грошей на солодощі. Інакше вона купила б

багато цікавих книг. 23. Ми пошкодували, що дорога не йшла через ліс. Ми пішли б пішки. 24. Вона пожалкувала, що не запропонувала йому свою допомогу. 25. Він пожалкував, що не захоплювався туризмом і тепер не може поїхати з друзями в гори. 26. Вони пожалкували, що не можуть спати на свіжому повітрі, бо зранку йде дощ. 27. Шкода, що ти поспішаєш, а то б приєднався до нашої компанії. 28. Спортсмени пошкодували, що не тренувалися більше, інакше вони б виграли змагання. 29. Вона пошкодувала, що не купила лотарейний квиток. Вона б виграла авто. 30. Шкода, що я не вмю ремонтувати телевізор. А то ми дивилися б зараз мою улюблену програму.

## **I WOULD RATHER SMB. DID SMTH. I WOULD RATHER SMB. HAD DONE SMTH**

### **1. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. I'd rather we did not discuss her affairs. 2. Would you rather we took a taxi? 3. Would you rather I hadn't come? 4. I'd much rather we walked all the way to the station. 5. I saw she'd rather I didn't mention her name. 6. It was clear that they would rather nobody had mentioned the subject.

### **2. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Present or Past Subjunctive II.**

*Example: She'd rather nobody (to know) about it.*

*a) She'd rather nobody knew about it.*

*b) She'd rather nobody had known about it.*

1. I'd rather something ... (to happen) to clear the atmosphere. 2. Would you rather we ... (to dine) quietly at home? 3. They'd much rather she ... (to give) them a scolding and ... (to be done) with it. 4. Would you rather we ... (to help) you with the washing up? 5. She'd rather you not ... (to treat) her like a baby in front of her friends. 6. I'd much rather you ... (not to buy) it. 7 I'd much rather, you ... (to tell) no one. 8. I'm sure he would rather you ... (not to tinker) with his car.

### **3. Paraphrase the following sentences.**

*Example: 1) I don't want you to help me with the washing up. – I would rather you didn't help me with the washing up.*

*2) Father does not like you to take the car. – Father would rather you did not take the car.*

*3) I'm sorry you interfered. - I would rather you had not interfered.*

*4) I was so sorry she had already left. - I'd rather she had not left.*

1. She doesn't want you to tell her how to bring up her own child. 2. He is sorry you objected. 3. Mother doesn't like us to interfere with her housekeeping. 4. Do you want me to go at once? 5. I'm sure father won't like your tinkering with his portable wireless set. 6. The TV-set won't work now. Why did not your children leave it alone? 7. I've such a headache. I don't want you to play these records so loudly. 8. She is sorry the boy spends all his time reading. 9. Would you like me to stay? 10. Are you sorry I came?

#### 4. Translate into English.

1. Я б хотіла, щоб ти взагалі не торкався цього питання. 2. Звичайно, вони б хотіли, щоб ти це зробив сам. 3. Тепер вона б більше хотіла, щоб ти не вступав до цього інституту. 4. Звичайно, для них краще було б, щоб ви прив'язали собаку. 5. Матері краще було б, якби ви пообідали негайно. 6. Їм би краще було, якби ти нарізала бутербродів. 7. Я б хотів, щоб ми швидше переїхали на нову квартиру. 8. Сестра дуже б хотіла, щоб я допоміг їй почистити килим. 9. Звичайно, для нього було б краще, щоб йому не заважали. 10. Мені б було краще, щоб ти викинув з голови ці думки. 11. Звичайно, для них краще було б, щоб вони потрапили додому вчасно. 12. Тобі б було краще, щоб ти видалила цей зуб, інакше в тебе почнеться запальний процес. 13. Вчитель хотів би, щоб учні виконували всі його вимоги. 14. Для неї було б краще, щоб її коханий висловив словами всі свої почуття. 15. Я б дуже хотіла, щоб ви купили цей спальний гарнітур. 16. Бабуся дуже хотіла б, щоб ви давно допомогли їй попросувати білизну. 17. Я б хотів, щоб ти сказала мені всю правду у вічі. 18. Я б хотів, щоб ви швидко впоралися зі своєю роботою. 19. Я б хотів, щоб ви скористалися можливістю поїхати до Лондона. 20. Я б дуже хотів, щоб ти не пішла з вечірки так рано.

## LESSON 26

### THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE II IN COMPLEX SENTENCES (II)

1. The Subjunctive II is used in **adverbial clause of comparison (manner)** introduced to the main clause by the conjunctions *as if* and *as though*.

If the action expressed in the subordinate clause is *simultaneous* with that of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive II (*were, worked, spent, etc*) is used.  
*She speaks (spoke) English as if she were a real English lady.*

*She speaks (spoke) as if she **knew** everything.*

If the action expressed in the subordinate clause is *prior* to that of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive II (*had been, had worked, had spent, etc*) is used.

*She speaks (spoke) as if she **had known** him for a long time.*

2. The Subjunctive II is used in **predicative clause** introduced to the main clause by the conjunctions *as if* and *as though*, when we find the link verbs *to be, to feel, to look, to seem, etc.* in the principal clause. If the action expressed in the subordinate clause is *simultaneous* with that of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive II (*were, worked, spent, etc*) is used.

*I feel as if we **were** back seven years, John.*

*He looked as if he **knew** it to be true.*

*It was as if she **were** angry with him.*

If the action expressed in the subordinate clause is *prior* to that of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive II (*had been, had worked, had spent, etc*) is used.

*... now I feel as if you **had never been** away.*

*The house looked as though it **had been deserted** for weeks.*

*It was as if he **had done** something wrong.*

*It looked as if it **had rained** here in the last couple of days.*

## EXERCISES

### 1. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. She looks as if she knew something. 2. She looks as if she had been crying. 3. She felt as if she did not know him. 4. She felt as if she had long known him. 5. I felt as if my entire world lay in ruins at my feet. 6. Don't you feel as if you had never really known him? 7. She certainly does not look as if she were a stranger here. 8. It does not look as if it had rained here in the last couple of days. 9. He was not so well dressed as Robert, who always looked as though he had stepped out of a shop-window. 10. She looked fresh and clean as though nothing had happened to her that night.

### 2. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. She just stood there as if she did not mind. 2. Where are you running as if blood-hounds were after you? 3. Why do you behave as if it didn't in the least matter what we all think of you? 4. Day after day we saw him leave the office as though nothing special had happened to him. 5. He generally behaved as though he had done nothing out of the way. 6. He found Brenner standing on the sidewalk in his dirty rain-

coat and shaking as though he were suffering from a malarial attack. 7. He looked at me as though he wanted to ask me something. 8. There was a pause, with heavy breathing, as if a moment of emotion were being controlled. 9. When he finally broke the silence his voice was as hoarse as though he had been shouting inside himself. 10. She will speak to you as though nothing had happened.

**3. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. She speaks English as if she ... (to be) an English woman. 2. She speaks to you as if she ... (to know) you for years. 3. She dances so well as if she ... (to be) a ballet-dancer. 4. She looked at me in such a way as if she ... (to see) me for the first time. 5. The students were listening to the teacher's explanation with such attention as if they ... (to want) to remember each word. 6. The girls left the room so unexpectedly as if they ... (to be in a hurry) and not ... (to have) time. 7. She was dressed in a light coat as if it ... (to be) summer in the street and the sun ... (to shine) brightly. 8. We could not understand anything as though we ... (not to be addressed) in Ukrainian. 9. She treated him in such a way as though he ... (to be) her brother. 10. Don't you feel as though it ... (may go on) for ever? 11. Whenever I saw them it looked as though they ... (to be) on very good terms with one another. 12. He felt as if he ... (to catch) cold. 13. He looked as if he ... (to step) from the pages of "Pickwick Papers". 14. She always smelled as though she just ... (to come) from a long walk in a forest. 15. He looked as if he ... (not to have) a meal for a week.

**4. Comment on the use of Subjunctive II in the following sentences. Define the type of the Subordinate clause.**

1. He looked as if he had never done a job at all. 2. They walked together just as if they had done it scores of times before. 3. He looked at her suddenly as though for a second he suspected something and was angry about it. 4. He turned away as if he had never noticed her. 5. He treated her as if she were a piece of furniture. 6. The room looked as if it had not been lived in for years. 7. He looked as if he were pleased immensely. 8. It seemed as though they had understood everything. 9. We felt as though she were a child of six. 10. She looked so pale and thin as though she had been ill for a long time.

**5. Paraphrase the following sentences.**

*Example: Judging by the way he speaks English one can say that he is a real Englishman. - He speaks English as if he were a real Englishman.*

1. Judging by the way he looked at me one can say that he has never seen me before. 2. Judging by the way he has done his work one can say he is a skillful worker. 3. Judging by the way he looked at me one can say that he dislikes this idea. 4. Judging

by the way she cried one can say that she has suffered a heavy loss. 5. Judging by the way she sings one can say that she is an opera singer. 6. Judging by the way she spoke one can say that she is glad to help us. 7. Judging by the way she behaves one can say that she disapproves us. 8. Judging by the way he has translated this book one can say that he knows English perfectly well.

### **6. Paraphrase the following sentences.**

*Example: Judging by her look / appearance one can think she is ill. - She looks as if she were ill.*

1. Judging by her look / appearance one can think she is very unhappy. 2. Judging by his look / appearance he has suffered very much. 3. Judging by her look / appearance she has gone through a lot of hardships. 4. Judging by his look / appearance he is a geologist. 5. Judging by their look / appearance they have worked hard. 6. Judging by her look / appearance she had a walking holiday. 7. Judging by her look / appearance she has spent her holiday in the south. 8. Judging by his look / appearance he is having a good time here. 9. Judging by his look / appearance he has been seriously ill. 10. Judging by her look / appearance she dislikes the idea of spending a holiday in this camp. 11. Judging by her look / appearance she did not sleep several days.

### **7. Translate into English.**

1. Вона так поглянула на нього, неначе бачила його вперше. 2. Вона так серйозно про все говорить, ніби не семирічна дитина, а доросла досвідчена людина. 3. Вона багато говорила про Англію, ніби прожила там усе життя. 4. Вони ставили такі дивні питання, ніби раніше нічого не чули й нічого не читали про цю чудову країну. 5. Дув вітер і було так холодно, ніби надворі був січень, а не квітень. 6. Ви так загоріли, неначе все літо провели на півдні. 7. Вона дивилась на мене, ніби не впізнаючи. 8. Він зробить вигляд, ніби чує про це вперше. 9. У Вас такий вигляд, ніби Вам недобре. 10. Чому Ви дивитесь на мене так, ніби я говорю неправду? 11. Вона себе поводить так, ніби мала дитина. 12. У мене було таке відчуття, ніби ми говоримо різними мовами. 13. Вона важко дихала, неначе бігла всю дорогу. 14. Вона так говорить, ніби повторює чийсь слова. 15. Вам здаватиметься, що Ви ніколи й не хворіли. 16. Здається вони знайомі (одне з одним). 17. Вона зовсім не виглядала так, наче їй вже було сорок. 18. Здається, він уже тут. 19. У нього завжди був такий вигляд, ніби він усе добре розуміє.

### **8. Translate into English.**

1. У Джона було таке бліде обличчя, нібито він дуже хворий. 2. Він насупив

брови, нібито хотів здаватися суворим. 3. Ви дивитеся на мене так, ніби я украв у вас гроші. 4. Ви виглядаєте так, нібито щось жахливе трапилось. 5. Мері дуже плакала, нібито в неї трапилось велике горе. 6. Дитина була такою брудною, ніби її місяць не купали. 7. Він такий сивий, ніби йому 70 років. 8. У дитини великий жар, нібито в неї запалення легенів. 9. Джон так сміється, нібито йому розказали цікавий анекдот. 10. Квартира така брудна, нібито її ніколи не прибирали. 11. Він був такий веселий, нібито йому віддали всі борги. 12. Ви такий серйозний, нібито вам розповіли щось жахливе. 13. Він поводитьсь так, нібито він не маленький хлопчик, а доросла серйозна людина. 14. Він почував себе жахливо, нібито ми всі висміяли його. 15. Чому Ви такий задоволений, нібито Ви виграли авто? 16. Джон образився на Мері, нібито вона сказала йому всю правду у вічі. 17. Чого ти так горбишся, нібито у тебе викривлення хребта. 18. Вона виглядала набагато старше, нібито жила в тяжких умовах. 19. Він був такий радий, нібито йому дали можливість взяти участь у змаганнях. 20. Їй розповідали дуже багато, нібито вона втерлася до них у довіру. 21. Я загубився на площі, нібито там було дуже багато людей. 22. Джон прислухався до її слів, нібито бачив у них раціональне зерно. 23. Він так голосно розмовляє, нібито його ніхто не чує. 24. Вона хоче ходити з косою, нібито має довге волосся. 25. Він так добре підготував доповідь, нібито має достатньо необхідних книжок вдома. 26. Вони не дуже хвилювалися, нібито їх попередили заздалегідь, що трапиться. 27. Його засудили нізащо, нібито він був винний. 28. Ти стомлюєшся так сильно, нібито ти взяла на себе дуже багато обов'язків. 29. Локшина така смачна, нібито ти додала багато масла. 30. Мері так схудла, нібито вона перейшла на вегетаріанське харчування.

## **LESSON 27**

### **THE USE OF CONDITIONAL MOOD IN COMPLEX SENTENCES**

Complex sentences with subordinate clauses of condition (*conditional sentences*) may be divided into two groups:

- a) sentences of real condition,
- b) sentences of unreal condition.

Both conditions may refer to the past, present or future.

In **sentences of real condition** we find the any form of the *Indicative Mood*.

*If she **heard** it, she **gave** no sign.*

*If I **have offended** you, I **am** very sorry.*

*If she **was lying**, she **was** a good actress.*

*You **may go away** if it **bothers** you.*

*If the weather **is fine**, we **shall go** for a walk.*

We should remember the conjunctions which introduce the conditional clauses: *if, in case, on condition (that), supposing (that), suppose (that), providing (that), provided (that), unless*. Each of them expresses a conditional relation with a certain shade of meaning, and their use is restricted either for semantic or stylistic reasons. Thus *unless* has a negative meaning, although it is not identical with *if not*, as clauses introduced by *unless* indicate the only condition which may prevent the realization of the action in the principal clause. Because of this meaning *unless* is always emphatic.

*He is ruined unless he can get a million to pay off his debts.*

The Ukrainian conjunction *якщо не* cannot be rendered by *unless* if the negation refers only to the part of the compound predicate. In this case *if not* should be used.

*Одягайся тепліше, якщо не хочеш захворіти.*

*Put on a warm coat, **if you don't want** to catch a cold.*

The conjunction *in case* has a special shade of meaning, combining condition and purpose and may be translated into Ukrainian as *на той випадок якщо*.

*Take an umbrella **in case it rains**.*

The conjunctions *suppose (that)* and *supposing (that)* retain their original meaning of supposition. The conjunctions *provided (that)* and *providing (that)* imply that the supposed condition is favourable or desirable.

***Suppose you get lost** in the city, what will you do?*

These conjunctions may also introduce classes of unreal condition

In **sentences of unreal condition** we find *Subjunctive II* in subordinate clause of condition, and *Conditional Mood (should / would + Infinitive)* in the principal (main) clause.

1. If the unreal actions in both the if-clause and the main clause relate to the present or future, we find the *Present Subjunctive II (were, spoke, went, played, etc.)* in the if-clause and the *Present Conditional (should / would + Indefinite / Continuous Infinitive)* in the principal (main) clause.

*If I **were** a young man now, you **wouldn't need** a porter.*

*I **should kill** myself today if I **didn't believe** that tyranny and injustice must end.*

*If you **were not hurt**, you **wouldn't be talking** that way.*

2. If both actions relate to the past and contradict the reality, we find the *Past Subjunctive II* (*had been, spoken, gone, played, etc.*) in the if-clause and the *Past Conditional* (*should / would + Perfect / Perfect Continuous Infinitive*) in the principal (main) clause.

*If he **had not insisted** on her going there, nothing **would ever have happened**.*

There are two mixed types of sentences of unreal condition.

1. In the first type the condition refers to the past and the consequence refers to the present or future.

*If you **had taken** the medicine yesterday, you **would be** well today.*

*If we **hadn't been** such fools, we **should still all be** together.*

2. In the second type the condition refers to no particular time, and the consequence refers to the past.

*She **wouldn't have told** me her story if she **didn't trust** me.*

*John **wouldn't have lost** the key if he **were** not so absent-minded.*

Clauses of unreal condition may be introduced asyndetically. In this case inversion serves as a means of subordination.

a) *Were I you, I **wouldn't** do that.*

b) *Had I known, I **would have** told you.*

In (a) *Were I you = If I were you.*

In (b) *Had I known = If I had known.*

In sentences of unreal condition the modal verbs *might* and *could* are often used; they fully retain their modal meaning and therefore they do not form the analytical subjunctive. Here we have the group “modal verb + Infinitive” which forms a compound verbal predicate.

*If I **had** time, I **could go** there.*

*If I **could translate** this article, it **would be** nice.*

*If she **were still waiting**, she **might be** restless.*

*Would*, when used in the subordinate clause of a sentence of unreal condition, is also a modal verb forming with the infinitive a compound verbal predicate.

*If you **would come and see** us ..., mother **would be** as proud of your company as I **should be**.*

## EXERCISES

### 1. Analyze the use of the Conditional Mood in the main clause.

1. I would come at once, if you were really ill. 2. She would have felt happier if she had really loved that sick woman whom she had been nursing. 3. You would not say so if you saw her. 4. It would never have happened if I had not met you. 5. If you had studied hard last year, you would have passed your examinations successfully. 6. If you had repeated the rules, you would know them better now. 7. If he were a physician, he would have helped us yesterday. 8. If I had not gone to the country for the week-end, I should have watched the international sports events on TV. 9. If he had not been awfully tired, he would have called me up. 10. If I had seen him yesterday, I should have told him about it. 11. If my aunt had been a man, she'd have been my uncle.

### 2. Change the type of condition in the following sentences by making unreal in the present or unreal in the past.

*Example: If I see her, I'll be very glad.*

*If I saw her, I should be very glad.*

*If I had seen her, I should have been very glad.*

1. If he is still here, I shall introduce you. 2. If nobody objects, we shall discuss it first. 3. If you want to go, it can be arranged. 4. If she refuses to act, we shall have to take some steps to stop it. 5. If she learns about it, she will be offended. 6. If he is not here by six, I shall go. 7. If they like your poems, they'll publish them.

### 3. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the right form of the verb.

1. If you (to understand) children, you (not to speak) like that. 2. She (to grow up) a sensible person if they (to stop) treating her like a plaything. 3. The flowers (to grow) much better if you (to water) them regularly. 4. If it (not to be raining) steadily for a fortnight, we (to cross) this river easily. 5. The dinner hot (to be spoiled) if you (to turn up) when you promised you would. 6. The accident (not to happen) if the other driver (not to be speeding). 7. Nothing (to come out) of this scheme even if you (to give) them every opportunity. 8. If you (not to be) in my way, I (not to ask) you to step aside. 9. If you (not to go) out in this weather, you (not to be ill). 10. If you (to remind) me to bring the book, I (not to leave) it at home.

### 4. Fill in the blanks with the corresponding form of Subjunctive II and the Conditional Mood.

1. If I... free yesterday, I... to the museum with you (were, had been; should go,

should have gone). 2. If the children ... tired yesterday, they ... to bed at 8 o'clock (didn't get tired, hadn't got tired; would not go, would not have gone). 3. If it... yesterday, we ... at home for the whole day. We should not have gone to the country (was, were, had been raining; should be, should have been). 4. If she ... her exams in time, she ... to the rest home (passed, had passed; would go, would have gone). 5. If this article ...published, I certainly ... it. I receive this magazine regularly (was, were, had been; should read, should have read). 6. If the train... late, we ... early in the morning (was, were, had been; should come, should have come). 7. If your letter ... me at home; I... answer... it and inform about my plans for the future (caught, had caught; should, should have).

### **5. Answer the following questions.**

What would you do if...

1. ... you wished to spend a few days in the country? 2. ... you came on a short visit to London? 3. ... you wanted to ring a friend of yours but did not know his telephone number? 4. ... you wanted to become a teacher? 5. ... a friend of yours were in trouble? 6. ... you had much luggage and could not hire a taxi?

What would you have done if...

1. ... you had left your key at home? 2. ... a friend of yours had fallen ill? 3. ... you had not entered the institute? 4. ... you had not passed your last examination? 5. ... you had been deceived by your best friend? 6. ... you had had a chance to come on a short visit to England last year? 7. ... a friend of yours had caught cold and got a high temperature?

### **6. Answer the questions.**

1. What would you say if I invited you to the cinema? 2. What would you do if your friend intended to visit you? 3. What would you write if you got my letter? 4. What would you say if she took your book without your permission? 5. What would the students do if it were summer now? 6. What would you do if you were free now? 7. What sports would you go in for if it were winter now? 8. What would you put on if it were very cold in the street? 9. Would you come here if it were Sunday today? 10. Who would help you if you asked for help? 11. Who would give you his book if you needed it? 12. What would you have said if she had offended you? 13. How would you have behaved if she had invited you to her party? 14. What would you have done if you had had your birthday party yesterday? 15. What would you have done if you had decided to have a rest yesterday?

### **7. Create sentences with the same meaning by omitting *if*.**

1. If I were you, I wouldn't do that. 2. If they had realized the danger, they would have done it differently. 3. If I were your teacher, I would insist you do better work.

4. She would have got the job if she had been better prepared. 5. Your boss sounds like a real tyrant. If I were you, I would look for another job.

### **8. Translate into English.**

1. Я б подзвонила йому, якби ми були в дружніх стосунках. 2. Якби він завтра прийшов сюди, ми б усе обміркували разом. 3. Я б одразу вибачився, якби помилково образив його. 4. Я б наслідувала його приклад, якби він поведився розумно. 5. На вашому місці, я був би уважнішим до своїх друзів. 6. Він би сам прийняв рішення з цього питання, якби не захворів. 7. Якби Ви допомогли їм упакувати речі, вони б не запізнилися на поїзд. 8. Якби Ви сказали їй цю новину вчора, вона б не спала всю ніч. 9. Якби я отримала необхідні відомості минулого тижня, то закінчила б свою роботу завтра. 10. Якби ми замовили квитки заздалегідь, то змогли б вирушити на південь на цьому тижні. 11. Якби я роздобув словник вчора, то закінчив би переклад цієї статті сьогодні. 12. Якби ти одяглася тепліше, то не застудилася б. 13. Якби Ви були уважніші на уроках, ви не робили б так багато помилок. 14. Якби він прийшов на 10 хвилин раніше, то не запізнився б на поїзд. 15. Якби я зараз був у Санкт-Петербурзі, то зупинився б у свого товариша. 16. Якби в мене не боліла голова, я б не пішла так рано додому. 17. Якби я дуже поспішала, то взяла б таксі. 18. Ви б помітили цю помилку, якби були більш уважні. 19. Якби ночі були тепліші, ми б спали надворі. 20. Якби вона не хворіла, то взяла б участь в сьогоднішньому вечорі. 21. На Вашому місці, я б його покарала. 22. Якби він ретельно готувався, то не провалився б на екзамені. 23. На Вашому місці, я б переконала його взяти участь у конференції. 24. Якби мій товариш був у Києві, він би показав мені місто. 25. Якби ми не вжили необхідних заходів, робота була б зіпсована. 26. Якби зараз ішов дощ, ми б залишились вдома.

### **9. Translate into English.**

1. Якби ви вчилися добре, ви б отримували стипендію. 2. Якби ви були більш економним, ви були б дуже багаті. 3. Якби я влітку заробив 2 тисячі доларів, я б поїхав відпочивати до Єгипту. 4. Якби я зміг, я б дав тобі відповіді на всі запитання. 5. Якби я знав, що цю статтю будуть питати на екзамені, я б давно її законспектував. 6. Якби вчора йшов сніг, ми пішли б кататися на лижах сьогодні. 7. Якби він гарно співав, його б запросили до цієї групи. 8. Якби я був вдома вчора, я б допоміг тобі впоратися з домашнім завданням. 9. Якби ви регулярно читали газети, то ви були б дуже проінформовані про події у нашій країні. 10. Якби я жив у гуртожитку, я б не втрачав так багато часу на дорогу. 11. Якби ти їв кожного ранку вівсяну кашу, ти б став сильним і здоровим. 12. Якби не було так

холодно сьогодні, ми б зараз каталися на ковзанах. 13. Якби ти не була такою неуважною, ти б писала тести з граматики англійської мови на «відмінно». 14. Що б ти зараз робив, якби був вільний? 15. Я не бачив Лілі понад 10 років. Якби я зустрів її на вулиці, я б не впізнав її. 16. Ми б зараз йшли на каток, якби не було так холодно. 17. Якби зараз не йшов дощ, ми б грали у футбол. 18. Якби ця справа не була така важлива, я б не поїхав у відрядження вчора. 19. Якби ти більше тренувався у минулому році, то виграв би змагання зараз. 20. Джейн не була б такою короткозорою, якби раніше не читала багато, особливо вночі. 21. Сьогодні не було б так вогко, якби зараз не йшов дощ. 22. Ти б давно написав статтю, якби мав достатньо інформації. 23. Якби я знала про це вчора, я б прийшла сьогодні. 24. Якби ви приїхали вчора, ви б взяли участь у обговоренні цього плану. 25. Якби я не була така зайнята, я б поїхала з вами за місто.

### **10. Translate into English.**

1. Якби я не залишила свій зошит вдома, я б показала зараз вам відповіді на тестові завдання. 2. Якби я не була у вас дуже давно, я б не приходила до вас сьогодні. 3. Якби вчора світило сонце, ми б пішли до парку. 4. Якби я знав номер вашого телефону, я б обов'язково подзвонив вам. 5. На вашому місці я б пішов вчора в бібліотеку і взяв би там цю книгу. 6. Якби вона не була зайнята вчора ввечері, ми б відвідали з нею картинну галерею. 7. Якби ти не зламав руку, ти б міг взяти участь у змаганнях. 8. Якби тебе не підтримали друзі, ти б ніколи не виплутався з цієї історії. 9. Якби Ви сповістили мене, що приїдете вчора, я б обов'язково зустрів Вас. 10. Якби Ви склали випускні екзамени на «відмінно», то були б зараховані до університету без вступних іспитів. 11. Якби ти повторила правила вчора, то отримала б сьогодні дуже гарну оцінку. 12. Якби ви знали його, ви б попросили його допомогти вам. 13. Якби ти прийшла на вокзал вчасно, ти б зустріла свого найкращого друга. 14. Якби Ви говорили голосніше, то враження від вашої доповіді було б набагато краще. 15. Якби мама залишилася вдома, вона б приготувала обід. 16. Якби ваша сестра досягла відмінних результатів з англійської мови, вона б одержала золоту медаль. 17. Моя стаття була б надрукована, якби я закінчив її минулого тижня. 18. Я б відповів на всі запитання, якби я був упевнений. 19. Ви б відвідали Ермітаж, якби поїхали торік до Санкт-Петербургу. 20. Якби ця блузка підходила до спідниці, я б купила її. 21. Якби він образив тебе, я б не пробачив йому. 22. Якби ви вчасно звернулися до лікаря, ви б уже видужали. 23. Якби вчора був дощ, я б не поливав город сьогодні. 24. Якби ви не були таким працелюбним, ви б не досягли таких великих успіхів у роботі. 25. Якби студенти читали більше художньої літератури, вони б оволоділи мовою набагато краще.

## TYPES OF CONDITION

Types of Condition	Subordinate Clause	Main Clause
<b>Real</b>	<i>Indicative (Present/ Past)</i>	<i>Indicative / Imperative</i>
	If he <b>has</b> a car, If you <b>see</b> Nick,	he <b>will drive</b> to the Caucasus. please, <b>give</b> him my best regard.
<b>Unreal (referring to present or future)</b>	<i>Present Subjunctive II (Past Indefinite / were)</i>	<i>Present Conditional Vaux(should/would) + Indefinite/Continuous Infinitive</i>
	If he <b>had</b> a car,	he <b>would drive</b> to the Caucasus.
<b>Unreal (referring to past)</b>	<i>Past Subjunctive II (Past Perfect)</i>  If he <b>had had</b> a car last summer,	<i>Past Conditional Vaux(should/would) + Perfect/Perfect Continuous Infinitive</i>  he <b>would have driven</b> to the Caucasus.

### 11. Translate into English, paying attention to the type of condition.

1. Якщо Ви все ж таки запізнитесь на потяг, то зможете доїхати туди автобусом.
2. Якщо виявиться, що він адреси не знає, то запитайте в секретаря.
3. Якщо так трапиться, що Ви його зустрінете, то передайте, що ми його не забули.
4. Якщо трапиться що туфлі їй будуть замалі, їх буде взувати її молодша сестра.
5. Якщо випадково Ви побачите цей словник, купіть і мені примірник.
6. Якщо все ж таки Вам стане в літаку недобре, випийте одну або дві таблетки.
7. Якщо вода все-таки виявиться холодною, не дозволяйте дітям купатися.
8. Якщо він все ж забуде про свою обіцянку, я йому нагадаю.
9. Якщо Ви випадково повернетесь рано, подзвоніть мені.
10. Якщо Ви все ж таки зможете приїхати, ми будемо дуже раді.
11. Якщо кемпінги виявляться далеко від станції, ми поїдемо на таксі.
12. Якщо Ви все ж таки подзвоните мені вранці, ми поїдемо на пікнік з ранку.
13. Якби Ви подзвонили мені вчора вранці, ми б разом поїхали на пікнік.
14. Якщо все ж таки в нас з'явиться час, ми відвідаємо Вас.
15. Якби в нас був час, ми б відвідали цей захід.
16. Якщо я все ж таки буду в Санкт-Петербурзі, то піду в Ермітаж.
17. Якщо я поїду в Санкт-Петербург, обов'язково піду в Ермітаж.
18. Якби я був у Санкт-Петербурзі, я б пішов в Ермітаж.
19. Якщо завтра погода буде гарна, ми підемо до лісу.
20. Якби завтра погода була гарна, ми б пішли до лісу.
21. Де ти мене чекатимеш, якщо ми домовимось про зустріч?
22. Де б ти мене чекав, якби ми домовились про зустріч?
23. Ти б не розбив

вазу, якби був обережнішим. 24. Ми всі будемо дуже раді, якщо він матиме успіх на завтрашньому вечорі. 25. Ми б усі були дуже раді, якщо б він мав успіх на завтрашньому вечорі. 26. Якби ти поклала книжку на місце, вона б зараз була тут. 27. Якщо Ви розпочнете роботу відразу, Ви зможете її закінчити вчасно. 28. Якби Ви розпочали цю роботу відразу, то змогли б завершити її вчасно. 29. Якби я була тоді сама, то б уладнала цю справу. 30. Якби Ви були уважніші на минулому уроці, то зараз би краще знали матеріал. 31. Якщо я добуду її адресу, то обов'язково напишу їй. 32. Якщо так станеться, що в мене буде її адреса, то обов'язково напишу їй.

## **12. Translate into English.**

1. Якщо мій брат все ж таки буде займатися спортом, він буде здоровий і не буде хворіти. 2. Трапиться так, що ви будете на вокзалі, замовте мені, будь ласка, два квитки на південь. 3. Станеться так, що ви не прийдете, обов'язково подзвоніть мені. 4. Станеться так, що ти поїдеш до Лондона, обов'язково відвідай Британський музей. 5. Станеться так, що я одержу погану оцінку з англійської мови, я обов'язково виправлю її. 6. Якщо ти все ж таки потрапиш у біду, я допоможу тобі. 7. Якщо ж мама повернеться з роботи вчасно, ми встигнемо приготувати смачну вечерю. 8. Якщо завтра ви не вивчите правила з граматики, ви напишете тест погано. 9. Якщо мій друг все ж таки пропустить завтра заняття, я допоможу йому з домашнім завданням. 10. Якщо ж я не зроблю домашнє завдання, я не піду до школи завтра. 11. Станеться так, що я все ж складу сесію з гарними оцінками, мені дозволять поїхати на море на кілька днів. 12. Станеться так, що в мене буде машина, я не буду добиратися до університету міським транспортом і ніколи не буду спізнюватися на заняття. 13. Станеться так, що завтра буде набагато тепліше, ми обов'язково поїдемо на пікнік. 14. Трапиться так, що ви скажете мені неправду, я ніколи не буду мати з вами справ. 15. Якщо ви все ж таки захворієте, вам обов'язково треба кинути палити. 16. Якщо ж ви все таки побачите Петра, скажіть йому, щоб негайно подзвонив мені. 17. Трапиться так, що ви знайдете мою книгу, віднесіть її до бібліотеки. 18. Якщо ж тобі все таки подобається ця сукня, купи її. 19. Трапиться так, що ти зробиш мені цю послугу, я буду тобі дуже зобов'язаний. 20. Якщо вам трапляться незнайомі слова у тексті, подивіться їх у словнику.

## LESSON 28

# SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD / SUBJUNCTIVE I IN COMPLEX SENTENCES

**Subjunctive I** represents an action as problematic, but not as contradicting reality. It is used to express order, request, suggestion, supposition, purpose etc.

*I suggest that he **do** the work.*

*Long **live** the forces of peace!*

**Subjunctive I** has no tenses; the same form is used for the present, past and future.

*He orders that we **be** present.*

*He ordered that we **be** present.*

*It is necessary that you **be** present to-morrow.*

*Far **be** it from me to contradict you.*

*God **forbid!***

**The Suppositional Mood** represents an action as problematic, but not contradicting reality. It is used to express necessity, order, suggestion, and supposition.

**The Suppositional Mood** is formed by combining the auxiliary verb *should* (for all persons) with the Infinitive. It has two tenses: **the present** and **the past**.

**The Present Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb *should* + *Indefinite (Continuous) Infinitive*:

*I suggested that he **should meet** her.*

**The Past Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb *should* + *Perfect (Perfect Continuous) Infinitive*:

*She was frightened lest she **should have been doing** something wrong.*

1. The Suppositional Mood / Subjunctive I is used in **subject clauses** after:

a) a principal clause of the type: ***It + be + Adjective***

*It is (was) necessary*

*It is (was) important*

*It is (was) right*

*It is (was) obligatory            } that he (should) come.*

*It is (was) better*

*It is (was) desirable*

*It is (was) useful*

*etc.*

***It was necessary that the child's history should be known to none.***

***It is funny that we should have forgotten all about it.***

b) after a principal clause of type: **It + Passive Verb**

*It is (was) suggested*

*It is (was) requested*

*It is (was) recommended*

*It is (was) instructed* } *that he (should) come.*

*It is (was) arranged*

*It is (was) advised*

*It is (was) insisted*

*It is (was) ordered*

*etc.*

***It was suggested that we (should) share our opinions on environmental problems.***

2. The Suppositional Mood / Subjunctive I is used in **object clauses** after:

a) after a principal clause of type: **N / Pron + Active Verb**. The verb usually denotes order, advice, suggestion, desire, etc.

*He advises*

*He arranges*

*He demands*

*He insists*

*He instructs* } *that everything (should) be ready by 5 o'clock.*

*He orders*

*He suggests*

*He recommends*

*He requests*

*He regrets*

*He is anxious*

*etc.*

b) after a principal clause of type: **N / Pron + Active Verb + it + Adjective**

*He considers it advisable*

*He finds it better*

*He thinks it desirable* } *that the patient (should) be taken to hospital.*

*He finds it important*

*etc.*

***I find it important that you should take part in the student exchange programme "Camp America."***

c) after a principal clause in which the predicate is expressed by a verb denoting fear, and the object of the subordinate clause is introduced by the conjunction *lest*. It

should be remembered that **lest** has a negative meaning and the verb in the subordinate clause is used in the affirmative meaning.

He worries

He trembles

He dreads } *lest he (should) be blamed.*

He fears

He is afraid

*etc.*

*He fears (feared) lest his secret should be discovered.*

But if an object clause is introduced by the conjunctions **that**, we find the Indicative Mood, often with the modal verb *may / might*.

*She fears (feared) that she will (would) be blamed.*

*She fears (feared) that she may (might) be blamed.*

3. The Suppositional Mood / Subjunctive I is used in **predicative clauses** of type: **N's / Possessive Pron + N + Vbe**. The subject in the principal clause is expressed by an abstract noun: *wish, suggestion, aim, idea, thought, task, request, arrangement, desire, intention*, etc.

*Mary's wish was that our mother (should) come and live in her house.*

*His suggestion was that we (should) stop and have a look round the castle.*

4. The Suppositional Mood / Subjunctive I is used in **attributive clauses** modifying the nouns: *wish, suggestion, aim, idea, thought, task, request, arrangement, desire, intention*, etc.

*The doctor gave the order that the patient (should) be taken to hospital immediately.*

*His wish that everybody (should) take part in the discussion was reasonable.*

5. The Suppositional Mood / Subjunctive I is used in **adverbial clauses of purpose** when a clause is introduced by the conjunction **lest**. It should be remembered that **lest** has a negative meaning and the verb in the subordinate clause is used in the affirmative meaning.

*She opened the window lest it (should) be stuffy in the room.*

*Don't let the baby play with the cup lest he (should) break it.*

*Shut the window lest you (should) catch a cold.*

But if an adverbial clause of purpose is introduced by the conjunctions **that, so that, in order that, so as** we find the modal phrase with *can / may* if the main clause refers to *the present or future*; *could / might* if the principal clause refers to *the past*.

*Don't let the baby play with the cup so that he may not break it.*

*Shut the window so that you may not catch cold.*

# EXERCISES

## 1. Translate into Ukrainian.

1. It was arranged that the town should be evacuated by the 15th. 2. It was ordered that no ship leave the harbour before daybreak. 3. I do not demand that you should memorize the text. 4. It is requested that all students should pass their second test in grammar before the winter session. 5. Do you suggest that we should give up the idea? 6. Is it important that the sitting take place to-night? 7. I don't insist that you do it now. 8. They arranged that I should spend the summer at aunt Mary's. 9. His suggestion is that we should do it ourselves. 10. He made the suggestion that we should not take any steps until we hear from him.

## 2. Paraphrase the following sentences.

*Example:*

*He suggests that we should do it ourselves.*

His suggestion is  
He makes the suggestion  
It is suggested

} that we should do it ourselves

*He arranged that she should not be interviewed.*

The arrangement was  
He made the arrangement  
It was arranged

} that she should not be interviewed

*He will recommend that you should stop smoking.*

His recommendation will be  
He will make the recommendation  
It will be recommended

} that you should stop smoking

1. I suggest that we should not take any steps until we hear from her. 2. He will only suggest that measures should be taken without specifying which. 3. He ordered that the women and children should be taken care of first. 4. They recommended that nothing should be done without the doctor's advice. 5. She ruled that no child should come to school without ties. 6. They will demand that the agreement be considered void. 7. The doctor strongly recommends that the children should be given cod-liver oil all through the winter and early spring.

## 3. Complete the following sentences.

*Example: Her only wish was that she should be left free.*

1. In her letters she expressed her wish... 2. She followed the doctor's

recommendation ... 3. He forgot the rule ... 4. I think there is a rule . . . 5. Finally we made the arrangement... 6. I'm sure the arrangement will be... 7. I've heard of no order... 8. Her suggestion is ... 9. We came to the arrangement... 10. The poet's dying wish was... 11. Mother's rule was ...

#### **4. Replace the infinitives in brackets.**

1. Please mark the place in the book lest I (to waste) time looking for it. 2. I think we had better take an earlier train lest mother (to worry) 3. Watch that milk lest it (to boil) over. 4. I agreed to share his umbrella lest my best hat (to be spoiled). 5. We did not want to talk about it lest something (to happen) to spoil it all. 6. She always kept the jam cupboard locked lest the children (to get) at it. 7. The late-comers must take seats in the gallery lest they (to disturb) the others.

#### **5. Answer the following questions.**

*Example: Why did you close the window? – Lest the wind should break it.*

1. What do you want to leave her message for? 2. Why did you write the rule on the blackboard? 3. Why do you give me this plan? 4. Why do you want us to start so early? 5. Why do you make her wear her coat? 6. Why do you want us to sit in the front row? 7. Why do you keep the dog chained? 8. Look at this fat man. Why is he running so? 9. Why do you always pack your son's bag?

#### **6. Complete the following sentences.**

1. Open the window lest... 2. Tell him about the meeting lest... 3. Put down my address so that... 4. Leave the cat alone lest... 5. Better take a sleeping pill lest... 6. Help her with the dishes so that... 7. Don't let him eat too many sweets lest ... 8. I'll take my umbrella so that ... 9. Don't tell her anything lest... 10. I'll leave his supper on the stove lest... 11. Let's walk a bit slower so that... 12. Show her the plan so that... 13. We left early lest ... 14. The gates are never locked in order that ... 15. I did it only that... 16. Put it right here that... 17. Speak lower so that... 18. I went there yesterday so that... 19. Show her the way to the station lest... 20. I did all my shopping early in the morning in order that... 21. Let's start now lest... 22. Do it at once so that... 23. I took her for a walk so that...

#### **7. Translate into English.**

1. Дуже важливо, щоб студенти брали участь у суспільному житті. 2. Було запропоновано, щоб ми вийшли раніше. 3. Просьть зберігати квитки до кінця сеансу. 4. Невже це було так важливо, щоб він був присутнім? 5. Небажано, щоб діти залишалися вдома самі. 6. Рекомендується зберігати ліки в темному і прохолодному місці. 7. Порада лікаря полягала в тому, що хворий повинен дотримуватися дієти.

8. Головний інженер висунув пропозицію, щоб новий метод був упроваджений без зволікання. 9. Порада вчителя полягала в тому, щоб студенти не виконували нового завдання не виправивши помилки. 10. Я вважаю дуже важливим, щоб Ви використовували кожен можливість говорити один з одним англійською мовою. 11. Вона стала говорити тихіше, щоб її мати нас не почула. 12. Подзвони мені, коли будеш виїжджати, щоб я знав, коли на тебе чекати. 13. Вона дала мені ключ, щоб я могла відчинити двері. 14. Зніміть дитину зі сходів, щоб вона не впала і не вдарилась. 15. Давайте краще візьмемо носія, щоб не нести такі важкі валізи. 16. Покладіть книжку в портфель, щоб не загубити. 17. Запишіть мій номер телефону, щоб не забути його. 18. Порадьте їй одягтися тепліше, щоб вона не застудилася. 19. Випийте таблетку, щоб не було головного болю. 20. Попросіть її говорити тихіше, щоб вона не розбудила дитину. 21. Тут треба йти дуже обережно, щоб не впасти. 22. Ви повинні завтра встати раніше, щоб не запізнитися на потяг. 23. Він поклав свій багаж під лавку, щоб пасажери могли пройти на свої місця. 24. Зрозуміло, що вона теж хоче прийти. 25. Треба, щоб всі були присутні. 26. Чи слід нам кожне слово шукати в словнику? 27. Дуже важливо, щоб Ви якомога більше говорили англійською мовою. 28. Студенти просили, щоб лекцію їм прочитали ще раз. 29. Студентів просять не виносити газети з читального залу. 30. Було вирішено, що він поїде одразу після екзамену. 31. Я дала їм багато прикладів, щоб вони зрозуміли, як вживається це слово. 32. Він намалював мені план, щоб я не заблукав. 33. Він віддав наказ, щоб ніхто не виходив з кімнати. 34. Для дітей буде влаштовано гаряче харчування в середині дня.

### **8. Translate into English.**

1. Бажано, щоб ви дотримувались регламенту. 2. Необхідно, щоб ви зустріли делегацію на вокзалі. 3. Декан видав розпорядження, щоб студенти не спізнювались на заняття. 4. Наше бажання полягало в тому, щоб усі заходи безпеки були вжиті. 5. Розпорядження полягало в тому, щоб студенти не пропускали занять без поважних причин. 6. Бажано, щоб ви вивчили цей текст напам'ять. 7. Неможливо, щоб він кинув палити. 8. Він вважав природнім, що викладач володіє мовами дуже добре. 9. Він вважав цілком природнім, що його донька була прийнята до університету. 10. Неможливо, щоб він гарно співав. 11. Дуже важливо, щоб усі документи були підписані сьогодні. 12. Рекомендація комісії полягала в тому, щоб відкласти розгляд цього питання. 13. Студенти наполягали, щоб викладач зустрівся з ними ще раз перед екзаменом. 14. Він висловив бажання, щоб його послали на стажування до Кембріджу. 15. Декан дав розпорядження, щоб заняття проводились у другу зміну. 16. Було наказано, щоб учні прибирали приміщення самі. 17. Лікар

наполягає, щоб хворий приймав ліки регулярно. 18. Вчитель наполягав, щоб учні виконували домашні вправи письмово. 19. Декан видав розпорядження, щоб збори були перенесені на наступний тиждень. 20. Головуючий на зборах запропонував, щоб усі присутні висловили свою думку щодо цього питання. 21. Необхідно, щоб за тваринами у зоопарку добре доглядали. 22. Вчитель вимагав, щоб учень дав пояснення з приводу його відсутності. 23. Для юриста було важливо, щоб закони виконувалися. 24. Капітан наказав команді приступити до виконання своїх обов'язків. 25. Студенти попросили декана, щоб ліквідацію заборгованості перенесли на вересень. 26. Куратор вимагав, щоб всі студенти були присутні на зборах. 27. Необхідно, щоб всі студенти були присутні на лекціях. 28. Він запропонував, аби ми виїхали вечірнім потягом. 29. Хворому було важливо провести літо на півдні. 30. Директор вважав необхідним, щоб робітники взяли до уваги всі деталі проекту.

### **9. Translate into English.**

1. Студенти були дуже уважні під час тесту, щоб не зробити помилок. 2. Він вивчив усі граматичні правила, щоб не отримати погану оцінку на екзамені. 3. Вони зробили все можливе, щоб не програти матч. 4. С'юзан зробила все можливе, щоб Стів не одружився з Джоаною. 5. Він заважав мені працювати, щоб моя книга не була опублікована вчасно. 6. Він переслав рукопис швидко, щоб я міг ознайомитися з ним. 7. Він говорив повільно і впевнено, щоб ми не пропустили нічого. 8. Він наполегливо працював, щоб встигнути передати Джону усі документи. 9. Ви так впевнено розповідали всі останні новини, щоб ми їх добре зрозуміли. 10. Він робив все можливе, щоб організувати виставку своїх картин. 11. Він прочитав дуже багато книг, зробив багато дослідів, щоб висловити власну точку зору з цього важливого питання. 12. Вони придбали сучасні матеріали, щоб вони могли вчасно відремонтувати квартиру. 13. Він тренувався вдень і вночі, щоб його могли включити до нашої команди. 14. Вона вимкнула телефон, щоб її донька не говорила по телефону годинами. 15. Він працював вночі, щоб він зміг сплатити за навчання.

### **10. Translate into English.**

1. Боюсь, ми не зможемо здійснити свою мрію. 2. Ми боялися, що ці збори не відбудуться. 3. Боюся, що наші листи ще не відправили. 4. Боюся, що ця сукня не буде довго носитися. 5. Я боюся, що ви неправильно мене зрозумієте. 6. Боюся, що вона не отримає відповіді на свого листа. 7. Боюся, що ви не підіймете цю валізу, вона дуже важка. 8. Боюся, що ти не вивчиш цю поему напам'ять. 9. Боюся, що сьогодні він не прийде. 10. Боюся, що він не одужає до кінця семестру. 11. Ми боялися, аби захоплення боксом не відволікало його від занять. 12. Вона боялася,

що сину не вдасться відремонтувати комп'ютер і викликала майстра. 13. Вони боялися, що матч не відбудеться за поганої погоди. 14. Мама дівчини боялася, щоб мікстура не була гіркою. 15. Викладач боявся, аби студенти не прийшли на збори. 16. Я боюсь, якби мені не вирвали зуба. 17. Я боялася, якби двері не зачинилися. 18. Мати боялася, що її син скоро залишить навчання. 19. Боюся, що ви спізнитесь на поїзд. 20. Ми боялися, аби вона не застудилася. 21. Він боявся, якби він не зробив багато помилок у тексті. 22. Він боявся, якби збори не затягнулися. 23. Він боявся, якби у квартирі не було так холодно взимку.

## APPENDIX 1

### REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS

(Verbs with a bullet (\*) can also be followed by infinitives.)

1. <i>Admit</i>	He <i>admitted stealing</i> the money.
2. <i>Advise*</i>	She <i>advised waiting</i> until tomorrow.
3. <i>Anticipate</i>	I <i>anticipated having</i> a good time on vacation.
4. <i>Appreciate</i>	I <i>appreciate hearing</i> from them.
5. <i>Avoid</i>	He <i>avoided answering</i> my question.
6. <i>Can't bear*</i>	I <i>can't bear waiting</i> in long lines.
7. <i>Begin*</i>	It <i>began raining</i> .
8. <i>Complete</i>	I finally <i>completed writing</i> my term paper.
9. <i>Consider</i>	I <i>will consider going</i> with you.
10. <i>Continue*</i>	He <i>continued speaking</i> .
11. <i>Delay</i>	He <i>delayed leaving</i> for school.
12. <i>Deny</i>	He <i>denied committing</i> the crime.
13. <i>Discuss</i>	They <i>discussed opening</i> a new business.
14. <i>Dislike</i>	I <i>dislike driving</i> long distances.
15. <i>Enjoy</i>	I <i>enjoyed visiting</i> them.
16. <i>Finish</i>	She <i>finished studying</i> about ten.
17. <i>Forget*</i>	I'll <i>never forget visiting</i> Napoleon's tomb.
18. <i>Hate*</i>	I <i>hate making</i> silly mistakes.
19. <i>Can't help</i>	I <i>can't help worrying</i> about it.
20. <i>Keep</i>	I <i>keep hoping</i> he will come.
21. <i>Like*</i>	I <i>like going</i> to the movies.
22. <i>Love*</i>	I <i>love going</i> to operas.

23. <i>Mention</i>	She <i>mentioned going</i> to a movie.
24. <i>Mind</i>	Would you <i>mind helping</i> me with this?
25. <i>Miss</i>	I <i>miss being</i> with my family.
26. <i>Postpone</i>	Let's <i>postpone leaving</i> until tomorrow.
27. <i>Practise</i>	The athlete <i>practised throwing</i> the ball.
28. <i>Prefer*</i>	Ann <i>prefers walking</i> to driving to work.
29. <i>Quit</i>	He <i>quit trying</i> to solve the problem.
30. <i>Recall</i>	I <i>don't recall meeting</i> him before.
31. <i>Recollect</i>	I <i>don't recollect meeting</i> him before.
32. <i>Recommend</i>	She <i>recommended seeing</i> the show.
33. <i>Regret*</i>	I <i>regret telling</i> him my secret.
34. <i>Remember*</i>	I <i>can't remember seeing</i> him before.
35. <i>Resent</i>	I <i>resent her interfering</i> in my business.
36. <i>Resist</i>	I <i>couldn't resist eating</i> the desert.
37. <i>Risk</i>	She <i>risks losing</i> all of her money.
38. <i>Can't stand*</i>	I <i>can't stand waiting</i> in long lines.
39. <i>Start*</i>	It <i>started raining</i> .
40. <i>Stop</i>	She <i>stopped going</i> to classes when she got sick.
41. <i>Suggest</i>	She <i>suggested going</i> to a movie.
42. <i>Tolerate</i>	She <i>won't tolerate cheating</i> during an examination.
43. <i>Try*</i>	I <i>tried changing</i> the light bulb, but the lamp still didn't work.
44. <i>Understand</i>	I <i>don't understand his leaving</i> school.

## APPENDIX 2

### REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

#### A. Verbs Followed Immediately by an Infinitive

(Verbs with a bullet (\*) can also be followed by gerunds.)

1. <i>Afford</i>	I <i>can't afford to buy</i> it.
2. <i>Agree</i>	They <i>agreed to help</i> us.
3. <i>Appear</i>	She <i>appears to be</i> tired.
4. <i>Arrange</i>	I'll <i>arrange to meet</i> you at the airport.
5. <i>Ask</i>	He <i>asked to come</i> with us.
6. <i>Can't bear*</i>	I <i>can't bear to wait</i> in long lines.
7. <i>Beg</i>	He <i>begged to come</i> with us.
8. <i>Begin*</i>	It <i>began to rain</i> .

9. Care	I <i>don't care to see</i> the show.
10. Claim	She <i>claims to know</i> a famous movie star.
11. Consent	She finally <i>consented to marry</i> him.
12. Continue*	He <i>continued to speak</i> .
13. Decide	I <i>decided to leave</i> on Monday.
14. Demand	I <i>demand to know</i> who is responsible.
15. Deserve	She <i>deserves to win</i> the prize.
16. Expect	I <i>expect to enter</i> the University this year.
17. Fail	She <i>failed to return</i> the book to the library on time.
18. Forget*	I <i>forgot to mail</i> the letter.
19. Hate*	I <i>hate to make</i> silly mistakes.
20. Hesitate	<i>Don't hesitate to ask</i> for my help.
21. Hope	Jack <i>hopes to arrive</i> next week.
22. Learn	He <i>learnt to play</i> the piano.
23. Like*	I <i>like to go</i> to the movies.
24. Love*	I <i>love to go</i> to operas.
25. Manage	She <i>manages to finish</i> her work early.
26. Mean	I <i>didn't mean to hurt</i> your feelings.
27. Need	I <i>need to have</i> your opinion.
28. Offer	They <i>offered to help</i> us.
29. Plan	I <i>am planning to have</i> a party.
30. Prefer*	Ann <i>prefers to walk</i> to work.
31. Prepare	We <i>prepared to welcome</i> them.
32. Pretend	He <i>pretends not to understand</i> .
33. Promise	I <i>promise not to be</i> late.
34. Refuse	I <i>refuse to believe</i> his story.
35. Regret*	I <i>regret to tell</i> you that you have failed.
36. Remember*	I <i>remembered to lock</i> the door.
37. Seem	That cat <i>seems to be</i> friendly.
38. Can't stand*	I <i>can't stand to wait</i> in long lines.
39. Start*	It <i>started to rain</i> .
40. Struggle	I <i>struggled to stay</i> awake.
41. Swear	She <i>swore to tell</i> the truth.
42. Threaten	She <i>threatened to tell</i> my parents.
43. Try*	I'm <i>trying to learn</i> English.
44. Volunteer	He <i>volunteered to help</i> us.
45. Wait	I <i>will wait to hear</i> from you.
46. Want	I <i>want to tell</i> you something.
47. Wish	She <i>wished to come</i> with us.

### B. A. Verbs Followed by a (Pro)Noun + an Infinitive

48. Advise*	She <i>advised</i> me <i>to wait</i> until tomorrow.
49. Allow	She <i>allowed</i> me <i>to use</i> her car.
50. Ask	I <i>asked</i> John <i>to help</i> us.
51. Beg	They <i>begged</i> us <i>to come</i> .
52. Cause	Her laziness <i>caused</i> her <i>to fail</i> .
53. Challenge	She <i>challenged</i> me <i>to race</i> her to the corner.
54. Convince	I couldn't <i>convince</i> him <i>to accept</i> our help.
55. Dare	He <i>dared</i> me <i>to do</i> better than he had done.
56. Encourage	He <i>encouraged</i> me <i>to try</i> again.
57. Expect	I <i>expect</i> you <i>to be</i> on time.
58. Forbid	I <i>forbid</i> you <i>to tell</i> him the truth.
59. Force	They <i>forced</i> him <i>to tell</i> the truth.
60. Hire	She <i>hired</i> a boy <i>to mow</i> the lawn.
61. Instruct	He <i>instructed</i> them <i>to be</i> careful.
62. Invite	Harry <i>invited</i> the Johnsons <i>to come</i> to his party.
63. Need	We <i>needed</i> Chris <i>to help</i> us figure out the solution.
64. Order	The judge <i>ordered</i> me <i>to pay</i> a fine.
65. Permit	He <i>permitted</i> the child <i>to stay</i> up late.
66. Persuade	I <i>persuaded</i> him <i>to come</i> for a visit.
67. Remind	She <i>reminded</i> me <i>to lock</i> the door.
68. Require	Our teacher <i>required</i> us <i>to be</i> on time.
69. Teach	My brother <i>taught</i> me <i>to swim</i> .
70. Tell	The doctor <i>told</i> me <i>to take</i> these pills.
71. Urge	I <i>urged</i> her <i>to apply</i> for the job.
72. Want	I <i>want</i> you <i>to be</i> happy.
73. Warn	I <i>warned</i> you <i>not to drive</i> too fast.

## СПИСОК ВИКОРИСТАНИХ ДЖЕРЕЛ

1. Eastwood J. Oxford Practice Grammar. – Oxford University Press, 1999. – 433 p.
2. Dooley J., Evans V. Grammar way 4. – Newbury : “Express Publishing”, 1999. – 278 p.
3. Hewings M. Advanced Grammar in Use. – Cambridge University Press, 2003. – 340 p.
4. Murphy R. English Grammar in USA. – Cambridge University Press, 1997. – 350 p.
5. Swan M. Practical English Usage. – Oxford University Press, 1997. – 654 p.
6. Swan M., Walter C. How English Works. – Oxford University Press, 1997. – 358 p.
7. Thoburn T. Macmillan English. –N.Y. : Macmillan Publishing Company, 1987. – 454 p.
8. Understanding TOEFL : Test Book. – Princeton, NJ : Education Testing Service, 1989. – 27 p.
9. Vince M. Advanced Language Practice : English Grammar and Vocabulary. – Macmillan, 2003. – 326 p.
10. Wallwork A. International Express : Upper-Intermediate Student’s Book, 2001. – 137 p.
11. Wildman J., Gude K. Matrix : Intermediate Workbook. – Oxford University Press, 2002. – 46 p.
12. Azar B. S. Understanding and Using English Grammar. – N. Y. : Pearson Education, 1999. – 476 p.
13. Грамматика английского языка : Морфология Синтаксис / Каушанская В. Л. и др. – М. : Старт, 2006. – 319 с.
14. Грамматика английского языка: Морфология / Кобрина Н. А. и др. – М. : Просвещение, 1985. – 288 с.
15. Коваленко А. М., Мандич Е. Г., Павлов В. В., Голубкова Н. Л. Практикум з граматики англійської мови. Навчальний посібник. – Суми : СумДПУ імені А. С. Макаренка, 2008. – 218 с.
16. Коваленко А. М., Павлов В. В., Голубкова Н. Л. Основи синтаксису англійської мови. Навчальний посібник. – Суми : СумДПУ імені А. С. Макаренка, 2010. – 118 с.
17. Павлов В. В., Мандич Е. Г. Модальність у сучасній англійській мові. – Суми : Сумський державний інститут ім. А. С. Макаренка, 1991. – 59с.
18. Павлов В. В., Циба Р. Ї., Тімкова А. К., Коваленко А. М. Практична граматики англійської мови. – Суми : Слобожанщина, 1997. – 190 с.
19. Практична граматики англійської мови з вправами. Том 1 / За ред. Черноватого Л. М. та Карабана В. І. – Вінниця : Нова Книга, 2005. – 275 с.
20. Практична граматики англійської мови з вправами. Том 2 / За ред. Черноватого Л. М. та Карабана В. І. – Вінниця : Нова Книга, 2005. – 275 с.
21. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка/ Каушанская В. Л. и др. – Л. : Просвещение, 1973. – 214 с.

Навчальне видання

ГОЛУБКОВА Наталія Леонідівна  
КОВАЛЕНКО Андрій Миколайович  
СПАСЬКА Людмила Анатоліївна

# **Практикум з граматики англійської мови**

## **Частина II**

*Навчальний посібник  
для студентів вищих навчальних закладів  
(англійською мовою)*

Відповідальний за випуск: *А. А. Сбруєва*  
Комп'ютерний набір: *Н. Л. Голубкова*  
Верстка: *С. П. Цьома*

Підписано до друку 30.08.2017.  
Формат 60x84/16. Гарн. Times New Roman. Папір. друк . Друк. цифр.  
Умовн. друк. арк. 9,13. Обл. вид. арк. 8,32. Тираж 100.

*Виготовлено на обладнанні ФОП Цьома С. П.  
м. Суми, вул. Роменська, 100  
Телефон для довідок (097) 770-97-86*